教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料
非卖品

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级英语 下

PEP版（人教PEP版） 三年级起点

内含名师划重点

经典好题·精妙点拨

荣德基 主编

典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级 英语

下（PEP 版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：刘海平

微信公众号
教辅资料站

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录 CONTENTS

Unit 1 My day

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 1
课时 2 Let's learn ~ Ask and write ··· 2
课时 3 Let's spell ····· 3
周末加油站(一) ····· 4

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 6
课时 5 Let's learn ~ Do a survey ··· 7
课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time ··· 8
周末加油站(二) ····· 9

Unit 2 My favourite season

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 11
课时 2 Let's learn ~ Read and match ····· 12
课时 3 Let's spell ····· 13
周末加油站(三) ····· 14

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 16
课时 5 Let's learn ~ Ask and answer ····· 17
课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time ····· 18
周末加油站(四) ····· 19

Unit 3 My school calendar

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 21
课时 2 Let's learn ~ Read and say ····· 22
课时 3 Let's spell ····· 23
周末加油站(五) ····· 24

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 26
课时 5 Let's learn ~ Ask and write ····· 27
课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time ····· 28
周末加油站(六) ····· 29
Recycle 1 ····· 31

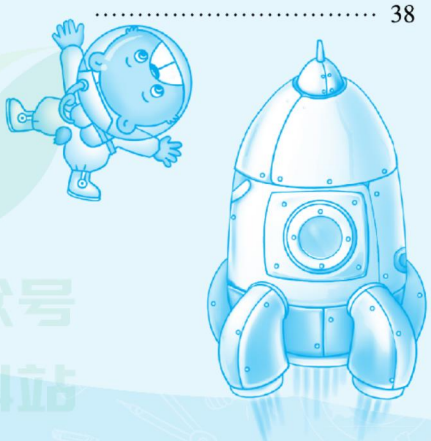
Unit 4 When is the art show?

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 32
课时 2 Let's learn ~ Ask and answer ····· 33
课时 3 Let's spell ····· 34
周末加油站(七) ····· 35

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 37
课时 5 Let's learn ~ Look and write ····· 38



微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 6　Read and write ~ Story time ····· 39
周末加油站(八) ····· 40

Unit 5　Whose dog is it?

Part A
课时 1　Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 42
课时 2　Let's learn ~ Look, say and complete ····· 43
课时 3　Let's spell ····· 44
周末加油站(九) ····· 45

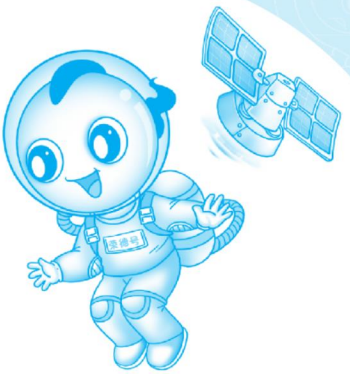
Part B&C
课时 4　Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 47
课时 5　Let's learn ~ Let's play ····· 48
课时 6　Read and write ~ Story time ····· 49
周末加油站(十) ····· 50

Unit 6　Work quietly!

Part A
课时 1　Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 52
课时 2　Let's learn ~ Look and say ··· 53
课时 3　Let's spell ····· 54
周末加油站(十一) ····· 55

Part B&C
课时 4　Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 57
课时 5　Let's learn ~ Look, match and say ····· 58
课时 6　Read and write ~ Story time ····· 59
周末加油站(十二) ····· 60

Recycle 2 ····· 62



期末复习训练

Unit 1 复习训练 ····· 63
Unit 2 复习训练 ····· 64
Unit 3 复习训练 ····· 65
Unit 4 复习训练 ····· 66
Unit 5 复习训练 ····· 67
Unit 6 复习训练 ····· 68

8 开活页部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷 ····· 69
Unit 2 过关检测卷 ····· 73
Unit 3 过关检测卷 ····· 77
期中检测卷 ····· 81
Unit 4 过关检测卷 ····· 85
Unit 5 过关检测卷 ····· 89
Unit 6 过关检测卷 ····· 93
期末检测卷 ····· 97

参考答案及点拨 ····· 101

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。



书面表达

五、阅读短文，完成请柬。

Hello, I'm Amy. Today is April 20th. Tomorrow is my birthday. On my birthday, I want to have a birthday party in my house. I will invite my friends to the party. At the party, we will eat the birthday cake.

My birthday 【细节理解法】

WHEN: 1. _____

综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

方法点拨： 此题用细节理解法。

短文第二句和第三句“Today is April 20th. Tomorrow is my birthday.”意为：今天是4月20号，明天是我的生日。由此可知“我”的生日是在4月21日。短文倒数第二句提到派对将在7点半开始。

句子题

改写句子
句子翻译
仿写句子

五、仿照例子，写对话。 【举一反三法】

例：Dec. 4th maths test　1. Sept. 2nd Miss Chen's birthday　2. Mar. 5th school trip

例：—When is the maths test?

—It's on December 4th.

1. — _____

— _____

方法点拨： 此题用举一反三法。

本题主要的句型是“—When is...？—It's on +日期.”每道题主要的句型都不变，我们只需要替换问句中活动或节日的名称以及答语中的日期。

单项选择题

三、单项选择。

2. I have _____ fun things to do in summer. 【对比记忆法】

A. little　B. a little　C. a few

方法点拨： 此题用对比记忆法。

a few用来修饰可数名词，表示肯定的意义，意为“几个，一些”；little和a little都用来修饰不可数名词，little表示否定的意义，意为“几乎没有”；a little表示肯定的意义，意为“一些；一点儿”。

词汇题

听力题

一、听句子，选出句子中所包含的单词。 【理解句意法】

(　)1. A. sing　B. ring　C. ink

(　)2. A. their　B. theirs　C. there

(　)3. A. here　B. hers　C. her

方法点拨： 此题用理解句意法。

对于“选出句子中所包含的单词”类的题目，我们在听的时候不能只听其中的某个词，要听并理解整体的句意。有些单词发音相同或很相似，如果不理解句意就很容易选错，例如2小题中的their和there;3小题中的here和her等。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 105 页）

一、选场景。请根据 Amy 和 Mike 的对话，选择合适的场景。

听力训练



A



B



C

1. Where is Amy at 9: 00 in the morning?

_____

2. Where is Amy at 12: 20 in the afternoon?

_____

二、选择正确的疑问词（组）填空。（注意大小写）

what time　when

1. —Excuse me, _____ is it?
   —It's 9 o'clock.
2. —_____ do you usually wash your clothes?
   —On Sunday afternoon.
3. —_____ do you go to bed?
   —Usually at 10: 00 in the evening.
4. _____ is your birthday?
5. _____ is your watch?

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. —_____ do you play football?
—In the playground.
A. Where　B. When　C. What

(　　) 2. —When do you go to bed?
—_____ 9: 30 in the evening.
A. In　B. At　C. On

(　　) 3. I work _____.
A. in night　B. at night　C. on night

(　　) 4. —When do you _____ school?
—At 6: 30.　【导学号 76836001】
A. go to　B. go　C. to go

(　　) 5. —When do you get up _____ the morning?
—I usually get up _____ 6: 00.
A. on; at　B. at; in　C. in; at

四、将下列句子排成完整对话，并根据对话填空。

（一）用数字给下列句子排序。【确定句首法】

(　　) Wow! That's too busy!

(　　) At about 6: 30. Then I eat dinner at about 6: 40 with my family.

(　　) When do you begin class in the morning?

(　　) When do you go back home?

(　　) We begin class at 8 o'clock. After class in the morning, we eat lunch in our school.

(　　) When do you usually have lunch in your school?

(　　) At 12: 30. Classes start at 2 o'clock in the afternoon.

（二）填空，完成句子。

1. We start class _____.
2. We _____ at 12: 30.
3. We _____ at about 6: 30.
4. I have dinner _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Ask and write

☞(答案见 105 页)

一、选出不同类的一项。

( ) 1. A. clock B. begin C. have

( ) 2. A. when B. after C. where

( ) 3. A. play football B. play basketball C. play the piano

( ) 4. A. eat breakfast B. morning exercises C. play sports

二、补全短语,并选择合适的图片。

( ) 1. do morning _____

( ) 2. _____ dinner

( ) 3. have English _____

( ) 4. play _____

( ) 5. eat _____

A.  B.  C. 

D. 

E. 

三、从上题中选择合适的短语补全句子。

1. I usually _____ at 7 o'clock.

2. We _____ at 6: 30 p. m.

3. We _____ at 11 a. m.

4. —When do you _____?
—At about 4: 30. We usually play football.

5. When do you _____ in the morning?

四、单项选择。

( ) 1. —_____ do you go to school?
—At 8: 00 a. m.
A. What B. When C. What's

( ) 2. —When do you _____?
—Classes finish at 3: 50 p. m.
A. begin class B. start class
C. finish class

( ) 3. —When do you eat dinner?
—_____ 【导学号 76836002】
A. At 7 a. m. B. At 7 o'clock.
C. At 11 a. m.

( ) 4. I like running. That's good _____.
A. exercise B. exercises
C. sports

五、选择正确的选项补全对话。

A. When do you start class?
B. At 5 o'clock.
C. Me, too.
D. It's Monday.
E. What do you have on Mondays?

Lily: What day is it today?

Sam: 1. _____

Lily: 2. _____

Sam: I have a maths class, a Chinese class and an English class.

Lily: 3. _____

Sam: At 9: 00.

Lily: When do you finish class in the afternoon?

Sam: 4. _____ What about you?

Lily: 5. _____

做个小记者

和你的小伙伴做个“互访游戏”,你当小记者,用“When do you ...?”采访你的伙伴都在什么时间做什么;然后再交换角色,你做“受访者”,用“I ... at ... a. m. /p. m.”来回答。

自我评价:☆☆☆☆☆

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞（答案见 105 页）

一、读歌谣，按要求练一练。

It's 5 o'clock.
Don't play.
Please clean your plate.
Have some eggplants.
Have some grapes.
You're so clever.
You're great!

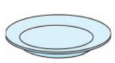
（一）找出歌谣中含有/pl/和/kl/读音的单词，并规范写下来。

1. class: _____
2. playground: _____

（二）写出其他带有/pl/和/kl/读音的单词各三个，并任选一个单词写一个句子。

1. cl: _____
2. pl: _____
3. 句子：_____

二、看图，写出含有 pl 或 cl 的单词。


1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____




4. _____ 5. _____

三、从方框中选择合适的单词，完成句子。

eggplants cloudy clever clothes

1. I often wash my _____ on the weekend.
2. Put the _____ in the fridge.
3. It's cool and _____ today.
4. Tom is _____. He has many good ideas.

四、看图，根据图片补全句子。

1.  2.  3. 

1. Clean the _____, please.
2. Put two _____ on the wall.
3. The football _____ is on the _____.

五、阅读短文，选择正确选项。

I am Bill. I'm a student. I get up at 6: 30. I go to school at 7: 15. I have an English class at 9: 00. I eat lunch at 11: 50. I play sports at 5: 30 p. m. I eat dinner at 6: 45 p. m. I do my homework at 7: 30 in the evening. I go to bed at 9: 30. I often play ping-pong and watch TV on Saturday. Sometimes I go hiking. I usually read books on Sunday. I like weekends.

( ) 1. What does Bill do?
A. He's a teacher.
B. He's a student.
C. We don't know.

( ) 2. When does Bill get up?
A. At 6: 30. B. At 7: 15.
C. At 9: 00.

( ) 3. Does Bill eat lunch at 11: 50?
A. Yes, he does. B. No, he doesn't.
C. Yes, he doesn't.

( ) 4. What does Bill do on Sunday?
A. He often plays ping-pong and watches TV.
B. He usually reads books.
C. Sometimes he goes hiking.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站(一)

(答案见105页)

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内容
语音	能掌握 cl 和 pl 的发音规律,能读出符合发音规则的单词	cl /kl/: clean clock class clever pl /pl/: plate eggplant please play
词汇	四会(听说读写)	eat breakfast 吃早饭 have ... class 上……课 play sports 进行体育运动 exercise 活动;运动 do morning exercises 做早操 eat dinner 吃晚饭
	三会(听说读)	when 什么时候;何时 after 在(时间)后 start 开始 usually 通常地;惯常地 Spain 西班牙 late 晚;迟 a. m. 午前;上午 p. m. 午后;下午
句子	重点	—When do you finish class in the morning? 你们上午的课几点结束? —We finish class at 1 o'clock. 我们一点上完课。
素养提升	必备方法	确定句首法 听关键词法 关键信息定位法
	必备能力	会询问并回答某人的日常作息。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音,给下列图片排序。

【听关键词法】





(　　)　　(　　)　　(　　)




(　　)　　(　　)

二、听录音,判断下列句子与你所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。

(　　) 1. Wow! That's too late.

(　　) 2. I play sports with my friends after school.

(　　) 3. We finish class at 4: 30 in the afternoon.

(　　) 4. My parents often get up late every day.

三、听录音,填词完成句子或对话。

1. —_____ do you do morning exercises?
   —_____ 7: 00 a. m.
2. We _____ every day.
3. I often _____ with my parents.
4. Chen Jie often does _____ on Sundays.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图片,说出带有"cl"和"pl"的单词。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、看图，根据提示和小伙伴编对话。



1. 2. 3. 4.

提示：—When do you...?

—At... o'clock.

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、单项选择。

( ) 1. —_____ do you have PE class?

—On Tuesdays.

A. What B. Where C. When

( ) 2. I often play _____ with my friends after school.

【导学号 76836003】

A. the football B. *pipa*

C. sports

( ) 3. —Do you often do morning exercises?

—_____ That's good exercise.

A. Yes, I can. B. Yes, I do.

C. No, I don't.

( ) 4. We eat lunch _____ 12: 10 _____ home.

A. at; at B. at; in C. on; at

( ) 5. —_____

—It's 7 o'clock.

A. When do you eat breakfast?

B. What time is it?

C. Is there a clock on the table?

七、根据图片写单词，使句意完整。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. I often _____ _____ _____ at 10: 00.
2. They usually _____ _____ after school.
3. Mike _____ _____ at 7 o'clock.
4. We _____ _____ _____ _____ at 3: 00.

八、从方框中选出下列各句的最佳应答语。

( ) 1. Do you eat dinner at 6 o'clock?

( ) 2. What do you do on the weekend?

( ) 3. When do you get up?

( ) 4. Is it 5 o'clock now?

( ) 5. When do you go to school?

A. I often get up at 7 o'clock.
B. No, I don't.
C. I often clean my room.
D. At 8: 00 a. m. E. Yes, it is.

九、阅读短文，完成表格。【关键信息定位法】

My name is Bely. I'm a nurse. I work at night. Usually I start work at 6: 30 in the evening. I eat dinner at 9 o'clock. I usually go home at 7 o'clock in the morning. After breakfast, I go to bed at 8: 30. I often get up at 3 o'clock in the afternoon. After that, I read books or watch TV. I eat lunch at 4 o'clock. Then I play sports at 4: 30. This is my day. I like my life.

Bely's day	
8: 30 a. m.	1. _____
2. _____	get up
4: 00 p. m.	3. _____
4. _____	start work
9: 00 p. m.	5. _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞(答案见 106 页)

一、听对话,把 Sarah 在周末做的事按照"often, usually, sometimes"归类。

听力训练


A


B


C


D


E


F

1. often: _____

2. usually: _____

3. sometimes: _____

二、读句子,给句子选择相应的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

( ) 1. The boy likes playing music.

( ) 2. He often plays football with his friends after school.

( ) 3. I usually watch TV at 7: 00.

( ) 4. I wash my clothes every weekend.

( ) 5. She sometimes cooks dinner on Sunday.

三、给下列问句选择合适的答语。【抓关键信息法】

( ) 1. Why are you shopping today?

( ) 2. What do you do on the weekend?

( ) 3. When do you do homework?

( ) 4. Do you watch TV on the weekend?

A. Because my mum worked last night.
B. Yes, sometimes.
C. At eight o'clock.
D. I often play music.

四、按要求完成句子。

1. I play ping-pong on the weekend.
(对画线部分提问)

_____

2. I often read books after dinner?
(对画线部分提问)【导学号 76836004】

_____

3. a, help, need, you, you, to, robot (.)
(连词成句)

_____

4. I'm also hard-working. (改为同义句)

_____

五、给句子排序,使之成为一段完整的对话。

( ) I often have art classes.

( ) Oh. You're so hard-working.

( ) Hey, Ann! What do you usually do on Sundays?

(6) That sounds like a lot of fun.

( ) What about you, John?

( ) I usually clean my room and wash clothes.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 5 Let's learn ~ Do a survey

☞（答案见 106 页）

一、给下列图片选择对应的短语。

A. go for a walk　　B. clean my room

C. go shopping　　D. take a dancing class






1. (　　) 2. (　　) 3. (　　) 4. (　　)

二、单项选择。

(　　) 1. I sometimes visit my grandparents _____ my mum.

A. in　　B. on　　C. with

(　　) 2. I always clean the blackboard _____ Mondays.

A. in　　B. on　　C. with

(　　) 3. She takes a _____ class on the weekend.

A. dancer　　B. dances　　C. dancing

(　　) 4. I _____ wash my clothes on the weekend. 【排除法】

A. often　　B. some times

C. am

(　　) 5. Usually Zip and Zoom _____ on the weekend.

A. go shoping　　B. go shopping

C. go to shopping

三、找出下列句子中的错误并改正。

(　　) 1. Let's go (A) to a walk (B) in the park. (C)

_____

(　　) 2. I always (A) taking a (B) dancing class (C) on Saturdays.

_____

(　　) 3. I sometimes go (A) shopping (B) and (C) my mum on the weekend.

_____

(　　) 4. Do you clean (A) your room (B) in (C) Sundays?

_____

(　　) 5. I sometimes (A) play ping-pong with (B) he (C) on Mondays.

_____

四、根据图片及句意完成对话。

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

1. —Do you often _____ _____ _____ _____ on Monday?

—Yes, _____ _____.

2. —What do you sometimes _____ on the weekend?

—I sometimes _____ _____ _____ my mum on the weekend.

3. —What do you always do on the weekend?

—_____

4. —_____

—I often go for a walk on Sundays.

我是调查员

扮演调查员，采访你们班的小朋友在周末做什么。运用句型“What do you usually do?”最后整理一个调查表，看一看谁的周末活动最有趣。

自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

微信公众号 教辅资料站

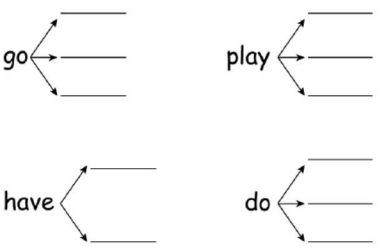
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞(答案见 106 页)

一、将下面的词汇写在相应的横线上,与动词组成短语。

homework	class	running	sports
ping-pong	kung fu	the *pipa*	dinner
shopping	swimming	morning exercises	



二、用适当的介词填空。

1. Robinson lives _____ an island.
2. This is a letter _____ my friend.
3. I like to play sports _____ my friends.
4. Kevin is good _____ sports.
5. Sarah and Mike are _____ a play now.

三、连词成句。

1. cave, sometimes, clean, my, I (.)

_____

2. is, sports, good, Robinson, at (.)

_____

3. swimming, sometimes, I, in, the, go, river (.)

_____

4. late, morning, always, Robinson, up, gets, the, in (.)

_____

四、补全对话。

Zhang Peng: Hello, Lingling. 1. _____

Lingling: I'm fine, thank you.

Zhang Peng: It's Saturday today. 2. _____

Lingling: I often play sports. Sometimes I read some books. 3. _____

Zhang Peng: Usually I go for a walk. 4. _____

Lingling: We can play sports together next Sunday.

Zhang Peng: 5. _____

A. What do you do on the weekend?
B. Good idea!
C. What about you?
D. Sometimes I play sports, too.
E. How are you?

五、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

【细节理解法】

Hello! I'm John. I am a policeman. I work at night. I drive my car to work at 9: 00 in the evening every day. So I eat dinner at 8: 00 p. m. I go home at 5: 00 in the morning. I eat breakfast at 5: 30 a. m. Then I go to bed. I get up at 1: 30 in the afternoon. Usually I eat lunch at 2: 00 p. m. and read some books at about 2: 30. I like to play sports from 4: 00 to 5: 00. On the weekend, I usually go hiking with my family.

( ) 1. John is a policewoman.
( ) 2. John goes to work at 9: 00 in the morning.
( ) 3. John goes home at 5: 00 in the afternoon.
( ) 4. John reads books in the evening every day.
( ) 5. John usually goes hiking with his family on the weekend.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（二）

☞（答案见106页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内容
单词	四 会	take 学习；上（课） dancing 跳舞；舞蹈
	三 会	why 为什么 shop 去买东西；购物 work 工作 last 上一个的；刚过去的 sound 听起来好像 also 还；也 busy 忙的 need 需要 play 戏剧；剧本 letter 信 live 居住 island 岛 always 总是；一直 cave 山洞；洞穴 win 获胜
短语	四 会	clean my room 打扫我的房间 go for a walk 散步 go shopping 去买东西；购物 take a dancing class 上舞蹈课
	三 会	go swimming 去游泳
句子	重 点	—What do you do on the weekend? 你周末做什么？ —I often watch TV and play ping-pong with my father. 我经常看电视，也常和我的爸爸打乒乓球。
素养提升	必备方法	抓关键信息法 排除法 细节理解法
	必备能力	会询问并回答某人的周末活动。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，根据所听内容给下列图片排序。



（ ） （ ） （ ） （ ） （ ）

二、听录音，选出你所听到的选项。

（ ）1. A. Where B. What C. Why

（ ）2. A. always B. play C. take

（ ）3. A. island B. cave C. sound

（ ）4. A. take a singing class
B. take an art class
C. take a dancing class

三、听录音，选出恰当的应答语。

（ ）1. A. It's 7 o'clock. B. At 7 o'clock.
C. I have class in the morning.

（ ）2. A. I often clean my room on Sunday.
B. Yes, I am.
C. Yes, I do.

（ ）3. A. I go shopping with my mum.
B. Because my mum worked last night.
C. I go shopping at 5: 00 p. m.

（ ）4. A. I often read books.
B. I like sports.
C. I usually watch TV on Sunday.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图，你能用短语说出下列图片吗？



1. 2. 3. 4.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、我能组成三个句子并读出来。

I	always often sometimes	clean my room go shopping go for a walk take a... class	on Saturday on the weekend on Sunday

例： I always go shopping on the weekend.

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、找出同类的单词。

lunch win why often dinner
when take sometimes

1. breakfast _____ _____
2. live _____ _____
3. always _____ _____
4. what _____ _____

七、单项选择。

( ) 1. Why is your brother _____ today?
A. shop B. shoping C. shopping

( ) 2. —_____ do you do _____ the weekend?
—I often watch TV.
A. What; in B. What; on
C. When; on

( ) 3. —I often play ping-pong with my friends on Sundays.
—That _____ a lot of fun.
A. sounds like B. sounded
C. sound like

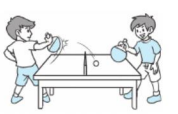
( ) 4. _____ I play football after school.
A. Sometime B. Sometimes
C. Some times

八、根据提示补全句子或对话。

1. I often _____ with my family. (散步)
2. Sometimes I _____ on the weekend. (上舞蹈课)
3. —_____
—I always clean my room on Saturday. (写问句)
4. —What do you often do on the weekend?
—_____ (根据实际情况回答问题)

九、阅读短文，按短文顺序给图片排序。

Hello, I am Tim. It's Sunday today. I have many things to do. I get up at 6 o'clock, and then I do morning exercises. After that I eat breakfast and do my homework. At 10: 30, I play sports with my classmates. I eat lunch at 12: 00. In the afternoon, I go to the park with my friends and I dance there. In the evening, I watch TV. And I go to bed at 9: 00. What a nice day!


( )

( )

( )

( )

( )

( )

十、写作训练。

以“My busy Sunday”为题，写一写你做什么，什么时间做以及做这些事的频率。

My busy Sunday

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

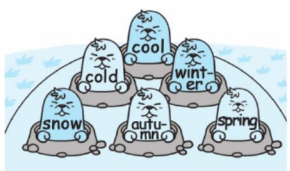
Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 106 页）

一、打地鼠。听对话根据你所听到的内容圈出要打击的单词地鼠。

听力训练



二、给下列句子选择相应的图片。

A.  B.  C.  D. 

(　　) 1. It's rainy and warm.

(　　) 2. It's windy and cold.

(　　) 3. It's sunny and hot.

(　　) 4. It's snowy and cold.

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. _____ season do you like best?

A. Where　　B. Which　　C. Who

(　　) 2. What _____ your favourite season?

A. is　　B. am　　C. are

(　　) 3. We will _____ the seasons today.

A. draw　　B. drawing　　C. to draw

(　　) 4. I don't like _____ . It's snowy and cold.　【导学号 76836005】

A. spring　　B. summer　　C. winter

(　　) 5. The autumn is _____ and sunny.

A. cold　　B. cool　　C. hot

(　　) 6. _____ is the weather like today?

A. What　　B. Which　　C. How

四、给下列各句选择合适的答语。

(　　) 1. What's the weather like today?

(　　) 2. Do you like music?

(　　) 3. I like rainy days.

(　　) 4. Which season do you like best?

A. I like rainy days, too.
B. It's sunny and warm.
C. Yes, I do.
D. I like spring best.

五、连词成句。

1. very, it, pretty, is (.)

_____

2. season, which, you, best, do, like (?)

_____

3. the, what, like, is, weather (?)

_____

4. we , draw, seasons, the, will, today (.)

_____

六、用数字给下列句子排序。

(　　) What about you?

(　　) Which season do you like best?

(　　) It's pretty.

(　　) Spring.

(　　) I don't like winter. It's too cold.

(　　) Winter. I can play with snow.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Read and match

☞(答案见 107 页)

一、找出不同类的单词。

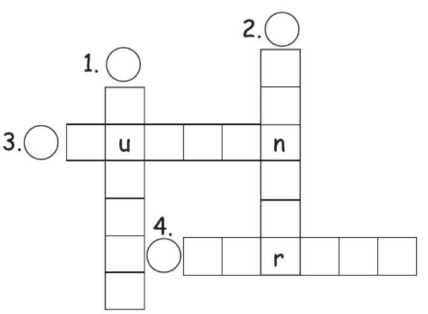
( ) 1. A. winter B. summer C. season

( ) 2. A. warm B. busy C. hot

( ) 3. A. yellow B. brown C. grapes

( ) 4. A. weather B. rainy C. sunny

二、在字母框中补全表示"季节"的单词,并把对应的句子序号写在圆圈内。



A. In this season, it's warm and windy. We often plant(种植)trees.

B. In this season, it's hot and the days are long.

C. In this season, the weather is cool and the colours are pretty.

D. In this season, it often snows in Harbin.

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. —What is the weather like in spring?

—It's _____.

A. hot and sunny

B. windy and warm

C. snowy and cold

( ) 2. —Which _____ do you like best?

—Winter.

A. season B. day C. colour

( ) 3. Spring is _____ with flowers and songs.

A. white B. green C. golden

( ) 4. —Do you like summer?

—Yes, I can _____.

A. play in the snow

B. look at the snow

C. eat ice cream

四、判断下列句子是(√)否(×)符合常识。

( ) 1. I can go swimming in summer.

( ) 2. Spring is green with flowers and songs.

( ) 3. Summer is cold in Beijing.

( ) 4. Autumn is golden. And winter is hot.

五、根据例句,仿写句子。【举一反三法】

例:  1.  2. 

例:—Which season do you like best?

—I like summer best.

1. _____

_____

2. _____

_____

交流爱好

一年四季各有特点,和你的小伙伴一起用"Which season do you like best?"来交流一下每个人最喜欢哪个季节,以及这个季节的特点吧。

自我评价:☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞（答案见 107 页）

一、根据发音选择正确的字母组合补全单词。

br　　gr

1. _____ andma　　2. _____ een

3. _____ own　　4. _____ eakfast

5. _____ eat

二、图文连线。

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

A. brown　B. library　C. grandpa　D. green

三、选词填空。

umbrella　brother　breakfast　purple

1. My _____ is helpful at home.

2. I have a yellow _____.

3. I often eat _____ at 8: 30 a. m.

4. Do you like _____ flowers?

四、单项选择。

(　　) 1. I have an _____. 【规律记忆法】

A. grandpa　B. brother　C. umbrella

(　　) 2. Grandpa _____ brown grapes.

A. grow　B. grows　C. growing

(　　) 3. Colour it _____.

A. green　B. grow　C. library

(　　) 4. Where is the _____?

A. green　B. grow　C. library

五、按要求完成下列句子，每空一词。

1. I like autumn best. （对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ do you like best?

2. paint, to, I, picture, a, want (.)（连词成句）

_____

3. My favourite season is summer. （写同义句）

I _____ summer _____.

六、阅读短文，找到每个人喜欢的季节和喜欢做的事情，连一连。【一一对应法】

I am Tim. I'm a student. There're four people in my family: my father, my mother, my brother and I. My father likes autumn best. He can draw many beautiful things in autumn. He's an artist. My mother likes winter. She's a nurse. She likes skating. My brother is a teacher. He likes summer best. He can go swimming with his friends in summer. I like spring. Because I can see many pretty flowers.

1. Tim　2. Brother　3. Mother　4. Father



A　B　C　D



a　b　c　d

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（三）

☞（答案见 107 页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
语音	能掌握 br 和 gr 的发音规律，能读出并拼写出符合发音规则的单词	br /br/: brown　library　brother　umbrella gr /gr/: green　grapes　grandpa　grow
单词	四　会	spring 春天　summer 夏天　autumn 秋天　winter 冬天　season 季节
	三　会	which 哪一个　best 最；　最高程度地　snow 雪
句子	重　点	—Which season do you like best, Mike? 迈克，你最喜欢哪个季节? —Winter. I like snow. 冬天。　我喜欢雪。
素养提升	必备方法	举一反三法　规律记忆法　一一对应法
	必备能力	能够询问并回答对季节的喜好。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，选出所听句子中含有的单词。

(　　) 1. A. sunny　B. windy　C. rainy

(　　) 2. A. summer　B. autumn　C. winter

(　　) 3. A. green　B. grape　C. great

(　　) 4. A. sport　B. season　C. song

(　　) 5. A. fishing　B. boating　C. swimming

二、听录音，给下列图片排序。



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

三、听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容是 (T) 否 (F) 相符。

(　　) 1. I like summer. I can swim.

(　　) 2. What is the weather like in autumn here?

(　　) 3. It's windy and pretty in spring.

(　　) 4. Winter is white and the year is gone.

(　　) 5. Autumn is good, but my favourite season is spring.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图片，说季节的英语名称。



五、朗读下面的对话。

Tom: Hi, John. Which season do you like best?

John: Summer. I can go swimming with my friends. What about you?

Tom: I like winter best. Do you like winter?

John: No, I don't. It's too cold.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、选出与所给单词同类的词，写在横线上。

summer windy winter blue cloudy
autumn brown black sunny

1. spring: _____
2. red: _____
3. rainy: _____

七、单项选择。

( ) 1. _____ colour do you like best?
A. What B. When C. Where

( ) 2. —What's the weather like in summer?
—_____
A. It's snowy. B. It's hot.
C. It's cold.

( ) 3. I often _____ with my parents in summer. 【导学号 76836006】
A. go swimming B. go swiming
C. goes swimming

( ) 4. —_____ you like the music, kids?
—Yes. It's very beautiful.
A. Are B. Do C. Does

八、仿照例子用一句话描述图中的季节。

例： I like winter. /It's cold in winter.

1.  2.  3. 

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

九、选择合适的选项补全对话。

Ann: Which season do you like best?
Tom: Summer. 1. _____
Ann : I don't like summer. 2. _____
Tom: Do you like winter?
Ann : 3. _____
Tom: 4. _____
Ann : Autumn.
Tom: 5. _____
Ann : It's so cool.

A. Which season do you like best?
B. I can swim in the sea.
C. What's the weather like in autumn?
D. No, I don't.
E. It's too hot.

十、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

Hi, I'm Lu Fan. I'm from China. I like autumn best in my country. It's windy and cool. The sky is blue and the leaves are colourful. I can go for a walk and do sports in the park. There are many fruits on the tree. Autumn is golden and farmers are busy. Mid-Autumn Day is in autumn. My family get together and eat mooncakes. At night we have a big dinner.

( ) 1. Lu Fan likes autumn best.
( ) 2. Lu Fan is from Canada.
( ) 3. Lu Fan can go for a walk and go swimming in autumn.
( ) 4. It's cool and windy in autumn.
( ) 5. There aren't any fruits on the tree in autumn.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞(答案见 107 页)

一、萨拉在描述她最喜欢的季节,请圈出听到的关键词。

听力训练

autumn spring	green white	trees flowers
warm cold	fly kites go swimming	

二、选出与句子意思相符的图。



A. B. C. D.

( ) 1. I like winter best.

( ) 2. The colours are golden in autumn.

( ) 3. I can go swimming every day in summer.

( ) 4. There are pretty flowers in spring.

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. _____ the flowers. They are so beautiful.

A. Look B. Look at C. Look on

( ) 2. —_____ do you like best?

—Yellow.

A. What colour B. Which season

C. Which one

( ) 3. I _____ summer. Sarah _____ autumn. 【导学号 76836007】

A. like; like B. likes; likes

C. like; likes

( ) 4. —_____ do you like winter?

—Because I can make a snowman.

A. Why B. What C. How

( ) 5. —What's the weather like in Beijing in spring?

—_____

A. It's red. B. It's warm.

C. I can play with snow.

四、根据图片及上下文提示完成对话。



Tom: Hi, Sam! Which season do you like best?

Sam: I like 1. _____ best.

Tom: 2. _____

Sam: Because the weather is 3. _____ and the colours 4. _____.

Tom: What do you often do in autumn?

Sam: 5. _____

Tom: That sounds great.

五、给句子排序,使之成为一段完整的对话。

( ) I want to paint a picture about autumn, too.

(1) Hello, Tom. Look at my picture.

( ) OK!

( ) Yes. The colours are really pretty in autumn.

( ) Good job! What pretty colours!

( ) That sounds good. Let's paint in the park this weekend.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 5 Let's learn ~ Ask and answer

☞（答案见 107 页）

一、看图片，写短语。



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____

二、判断下列句子是（√）否（×）符合实际。

（ ）1. I can go swimming in summer.

（ ）2. We can make a snowman in summer in Beijing. 【常识法】

（ ）3. Amy can pick apples in autumn.

（ ）4. I like spring best, because I can go on a picnic.

（ ）5. There are four seasons in a year.

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I can _____ (pick) pears in autumn.
2. I often _____ (play) in the snow.
3. I can go _____ (swim) every day.

四、单项选择。

（ ）1. There _____ beautiful flowers everywhere. 【前后一致法】

A. are　　B. is　　C. /

（ ）2. —Which season do you like best?

—_____. I can go swimming.

A. Spring　　B. Winter　　C. Summer

（ ）3. I can pick apples _____ my sister in autumn.

A. in　　B. and　　C. with

（ ）4. John often goes _____ a picnic in spring.

A. in　　B. on　　C. with

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

（ ）1. Which season do you like best?

（ ）2. Why do you like summer?

（ ）3. What do you often do in spring?

（ ）4. Do you like winter?

（ ）5. Why do you like spring?

A. Spring.　　B. I often fly kites.
C. No, I don't.
D. Because I can plant flowers with my father.
E. Because I can go swimming with my friends.

六、看图，补全句子。

1. 

2. 

3. 

1. I like _____ best.
   Because I can _____.
2. I like _____ best.
   Because I can _____.
3. I like _____ best.
   Because I can _____.

演一演，猜一猜

和同伴一起做游戏，轮流表演自己在最喜欢的季节里做的事情，同伴观看后用英语猜测表演者最喜欢的季节是哪个，在做什么。

自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞(答案见 107 页)

一、单项选择。

( ) 1. There is _____ snow. 【排除法】

A. many B. lots C. lots of

( ) 2. I _____ like summer. It's too hot.

A. / B. don't C. am

( ) 3. —What's the weather like in autumn in Hainan?

—It's _____.

A. cold and cloudy

B. cold and windy

C. cool and windy

( ) 4. I like _____. I can pick apples.

A. spring B. winter C. fall

二、选择合适的疑问词填在横线上,并给问句选择合适的答语。

What Where Why Which When

( ) 1. _____ is your picture?

( ) 2. _____ do you play in the snow?

( ) 3. _____ season do you like best?

( ) 4. _____ do you like spring best?

( ) 5. _____ do you often do on the weekend?

A. In January.

B. Summer.

C. Because the weather is nice.

D. I often pick fresh apples.

E. It's on the wall of my bedroom.

三、按要求完成下列各题。

1. I like summer best. (对画线部分提问)

_____

2. can, every, I, swimming, day, go (.)

(连词成句)

_____

3. are, flowers, there, beautiful, everywhere (.)

(连词成句)

_____

4. What do you often do in winter?

(用 play in the snow 来回答)

_____

四、阅读短文,判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

There are four seasons in a year. Spring begins first. Summer is the second. Then it's autumn. Winter is the last season in a year. In China, the weather is not the same in winter. In Harbin, it's windy and cold. It often snows. People can make snowmen. But in Sanya, it's not cold. It's very warm. The sky is blue. The leaves are green. People there can go swimming in the sea.

( ) 1. There are four seasons in a year.

( ) 2. Autumn is the third season in a year.

( ) 3. It's windy and warm in winter in Harbin.

( ) 4. People can make a snowman in winter in Harbin.

( ) 5. People can see snow in winter in Sanya.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（四）

☞（答案见 108 页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
单词	四　会	picnic 野餐　pick 摘；采集　snowman 雪人
	三　会	because 因为　vacation 假期　all 全；完全 pink 粉色；粉色的　lovely 可爱的；美丽的　leaf 叶子（复数 leaves） fall 落下；（美式）秋天　paint 用颜料绘画
短语	四　会	go on a picnic 去野餐　pick apples 摘苹果 make a snowman 堆雪人　go swimming 去游泳
	三　会	good job 做得好
句子	重　点	Why? 为什么? Because I like summer vacation! 因为我喜欢暑假!
素养提升	必备方法	常识法　前后一致法　排除法
	必备能力	能够表达自己最喜欢的季节的原因。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，选择你所听到的单词。

( ) 1. A. spring　B. season　C. summer

( ) 2. A. pick　B. picnic　C. pink

( ) 3. A. swimming　B. snowman　C. snow

( ) 4. A. best　B. because　C. beautiful

( ) 5. A. white　B. which　C. what

二、听录音，给下列图片排序。





(　)　(　)　(　)




(　)　(　)

三、听录音，填单词或短语补全对话。

John: Which 1. _____ do you like best, Sarah?

Sarah: I like 2. _____ best.

John: Why?

Sarah: I can 3. _____. What about you?

John: I like 4. _____ best. I love the colours.

Sarah: Yes. The colours are beautiful. And we can 5. _____.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图说话。根据所给句型描述每幅图。






1.　2.　3.　4.

句型：I like... Because I can...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

五、单项选择。

( ) 1. I like _____ best. It's green with flowers and songs.
A. spring B. summer C. autumn

( ) 2. There _____ beautiful flowers everywhere.
A. is B. am C. are

( ) 3. I can _____ in summer.
A. make a snowman B. go swimming
C. pick apples

( ) 4. —_____ do you like autumn?
—Because the colours are very pretty.
A. What colour B. What
C. Why

( ) 5. —_____ do you like best?
—Winter. 【导学号 76836008】
A. Which season B. Where season
C. When season

六、根据图片和问句回答问题。



1. 2. 3. 4.

1. —Why do you like summer best?
—Because I can _____ _____.

2. —Which season do you like best?
—I like _____ best.

3. —Why do you like spring best?
—Because I can _____ _____ _____ _____ with my friends.

4. —Do you often make a snowman in winter, Tom?
—_____, _____ _____.

七、阅读短文，选出正确的答案。

Hi, I'm Mike. I like summer best! It's sunny and hot in summer. I can swim in the sea with my friends every day. I can eat ice cream, too. In summer, the sky is blue. The days are long. But my mother doesn't like summer. She thinks summer is too hot. She likes spring best. She often plants trees and flowers.

( ) 1. Mike likes _____ best.
A. spring B. summer C. winter

( ) 2. Mike can _____ with his friends every day in summer.
A. swim B. eat C. drink

( ) 3. In summer, the sky is _____ and the days are _____.
A. green; blue B. blue; short
C. blue; long

( ) 4. Mike's mother's favourite season is _____.
A. spring B. summer C. winter

( ) 5. Mike's mother often _____ in spring.
A. plants trees and flowers
B. eats ice cream C. swims

八、写作训练。

以"I like summer best"为题写一篇小短文。

I like summer best

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 108 页）

一、听录音，写出下列活动分别在几月。（写阿拉伯数字）

听力训练

1.  _____月

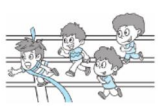
2.  _____月

3.  _____月

二、给短语选择相符的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

(　　) 1. singing contest

(　　) 2. maths test

(　　) 3. school trip

(　　) 4. sports meet

(　　) 5. English party

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. We have _____ English party in spring.

A. a　　B. an　　C. /

(　　) 2. I have _____ fun things to do in summer.【对比记忆法】

A. little　　B. a little　　C. a few

(　　) 3. —_____ is the party?

—It's in May.

A. When　　B. What　　C. Where

(　　) 4. We have a _____ contest in April.

A. dances　　B. dancing　　C. dancing

(　　) 5. _____ in spring.【导学号 76836010】

A. It　　B. It's　　C. Its

四、连词成句。

1. is, April, in, usually, it (.)

_____

2. is, test, when, the, Chinese (?)

_____

3. have, school, we, trip, May, a, in (.)

_____

五、根据句意和提示，完成对话。

April: English party　sports meet

May: school trip　singing contest

Amy: We have a few fun things this term（学期）. First, we have an English party.

John: Cool! When is it?

Amy: It's 1. _____.

John: Is the singing contest in April, too?

Amy: No, 2. _____. It's in May.

John: When is the sports meet?

Amy: It's 3. _____.

John: When is the school trip?

Amy: 4. _____.

John: That sounds like a lot of fun.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Read and say

☞(答案见 108 页)

一、根据日历写出月份的单词。







1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____







4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

二、下列节日或假期分别在哪个月份?请归类。

A. New Year's Day B. May Day
C. Father's Day D. Mother's Day
E. winter vacation F. Children's Day

1. Jan. _____
2. May _____
3. Jun. _____

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. The Children's Day is _____.
A. in April B. on April C. in June

( ) 2. _____ is the first month of a year.
A. February B. Sunday C. January

( ) 3. _____ is in March.
A. Mother's Day
B. Tree Planting Day
C. Winter vacation

( ) 4. —Is your birthday in June?
—_____ 【导学号 76836011】
A. Yes, it is. B. Yes, I am.
C. Yes, it does.

四、根据实际情况判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

【常识法】

( ) 1. Father's Day is in May.
( ) 2. New Year's Day is in February.
( ) 3. Winter vacation is usually in January and February in China.
( ) 4. Mother's Day is in April.

五、仿照例子,根据图片补全或写对话。

【举一反三法】

例:
—When is Tree Planting Day?
—It is in March.

1. 
2. 

3. 

1. —When is _____?
—It is _____.
2. —When _____?
—It is _____.
3. —_____
—_____

抽红卡猜绿卡

自制红绿两种英语卡片,红卡写出 1—6 月份,绿卡写对应月份的节日或活动。如:红卡写"January",绿卡对应写"winter vacation"。然后轮流抽红卡猜绿卡。如:抽到"January",要说"Winter vacation is in January."。三轮后,看谁猜对的卡片多。

相互评价:☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞（答案见 108 页）

一、读句子，圈出所有含有画线部分发音的单词。

1. fish The shoes in this shoe shop are cheap.
2. sheep I use a brush to wash my T-shirt.
3. children There is much milk on the chair.
4. lunch I buy the watch made in China in March.

二、读短语，给短语选合适的图片。

A.  B.  C.  D. 

（ ）1. chicken for dinner

（ ）2. a shirt and shorts

（ ）3. Chinese children

（ ）4. a Chinese teacher

三、单项选择。

（ ）1. I am from _____.

【导学号 76836013】

A. China B. Chinese C. chicken

（ ）2. The fish is _____.

A. shorts B. for C. fresh

（ ）3. The shorts _____ cheap.

A. looks B. are C. is

（ ）4. —What would you like for _____?

—I'd like some fish.

A. lunch B. China C. chicken

四、按要求完成下列各题。



1.



2.



3.



4.

（一）根据图片补全句子。

1. These are my sister's _____.
2. I am Chinese. I am from _____.
3. There are lots of _____ in the fields.
4. _____ is in June.

（二）从上题的答案中找出含有画线部分读音的单词。

1. cheese chair _____ _____
2. shorts ship _____ _____

五、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

I'm Li Hua. I live in Beijing. My favourite month is February, because I love winter. In winter I can sleep a long time. I can play in the snow with my good friend. My good friend is Li Ming. He lives in Beijing, too. He likes January best, because New Year's Day is in January.

（ ）1. Li Hua likes February because _____.

A. New Year's Day is in February

B. he loves winter

C. his birthday is in February

（ ）2. When is New Year's Day?

A. It's in February.

B. It's in March.

C. It's in January.

（ ）3. Li Hua can _____ in winter.

A. sleep a long time

B. play in the snow

C. Both A and B.

（ ）4. Li Ming's favourite month is _____.

A. January B. February C. March

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（五）

☞（答案见 108 页）

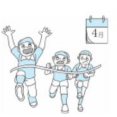
知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
语音	能掌握 ch 和 sh 的发音规律，能读出并拼写出符合发音规则的单词	ch /tʃ/: China　chicken　lunch　teacher sh /ʃ/:　sheep　fish　shirt　shorts
单词	四　会	January 一月　February 二月　March 三月 April 四月　May 五月　June 六月
	三　会	few 不多；很少　thing 事情　meet 集会；开会　English party 英语聚会 trip 旅行　year 年　plant 种植　contest 比赛；竞赛
短语	三　会	a few 一些　sports meet 运动会
句子	重　点	—When is the party? 聚会在什么时候? —It's in April. 在四月。
素养提升	必备方法	对比记忆法　常识法　举一反三法　抓关键信息法
	必备能力	能够针对 1 ~6 月份的活动进行询问并回答某个活动在哪个月份举行。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，判断图片与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。



1. (　　)　2. (　　)　3. (　　)




4. (　　)　5. (　　)

二、听录音，给问句选择正确的答语。

(　　) 1. A. It's in May.　B. It's in October.
C. I love my mother.

(　　) 2. A. Yes, it is.　B. No, it isn't.
C. It's in January or February.

(　　) 3. A. Yes, it is.　B. No, it isn't.
C. That's right.

(　　) 4. A. At 12: 00.　B. On Monday.
C. In April.

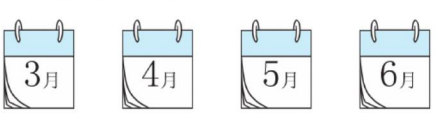
三、听录音，填单词补全句子。

1. Tree Planting Day is usually in _____.
2. My birthday is in _____.
3. The Chinese test is in _____.
4. The English party is in _____.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看日历说月份。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、下面的节日在哪个月？请仿照例子说一说。

例：winter vacation

Winter vacation is in February.

1. New Year's Day　　2. Tree Planting Day

3. Mother's Day　　4. Children's Day

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、将下列词汇分类，把序号写在横线上。

A. summer	B. May	C. Children's Day
D. winter	E. April	F. May Day
G. spring	H. June	I. Father's Day

1. January: _____

2. autumn: _____

3. Tree Planting Day: _____

七、单项选择。

(　　) 1. —_____ is your father's birthday?

—In January.

A. When　　B. Which　　C. Where

(　　) 2. The _____ is great!

A. sport meet　　B. sports meet

C. sports meets

(　　) 3. We have _____ fun things in winter. I like it very much.

A. few　　B. fews　　C. a few

(　　) 4. We will have _____ English party tomorrow.

A. an　　B. a　　C. /

(　　) 5. —Is Father's Day in June?

—_____　　【导学号 76836015】

A. Yes, it does.

B. No, it isn't.

C. Yes, it is.

八、根据例子，仿写对话。

例：English party, April

—When is the English party?

—It's in April.

1. New Year's Day, January

_____

_____

2. Tree Planting Day, March

_____

_____

3. winter vacation, January and February

_____

_____

九、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

【抓关键信息法】

I have a happy family. There are six people in my family. My father's birthday is in January. It's in winter, so we can make a snowman. My grandpa's birthday is in March. We can plant trees and fly kites. My mother's birthday is in May. We usually go on a picnic on her birthday. My sister's birthday and my birthday are in June, and my grandma's birthday is in June, too. We can have a good time, because June is in summer. We can go fishing and swimming.

(　　) 1. My father's birthday is in June.

(　　) 2. There are three birthdays in summer.

(　　) 3. My birthday is in autumn.

(　　) 4. My father's birthday is in winter.

(　　) 5. We can plant trees on my grandpa's birthday.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞(答案见 109 页)

一、母亲节要来了,听录音,圈出 Lily 和 Mike 要为他们的母亲做的事。

听力训练

make a card　play sports　write a letter

sing to her　play the *pipa*　say "Thank you"

tell a story　go on a picnic

二、选出不同类的一项。

( ) 1. A. season　B. winter　C. autumn

( ) 2. A. card　B. letter　C. write

( ) 3. A. father　B. mother　C. make

( ) 4. A. when　B. will　C. where

三、读句子,在图片下写出相应小朋友的名字。

Mike: I will sing an English song to my mum.

Lily: I will write my father a letter.

Peter: I will tell my mum a story on Mother's Day.

Lucy: I will play the *pipa* for my father on Father's Day.

Amy: I will cook dinner for my family.

1. 　2. 　3. 

_____　_____　_____

4. 　5. 

_____　_____

四、单项选择。

( ) 1. When _____ Tree Planting Day?

A. do　B. is　C. are

( ) 2. I really like the _____.

A. colours　B. colouring　C. coloures

( ) 3. —When is the trip?

—It's _____ October.

A. for　B. in　C. on

( ) 4. _____ is my favourite season.

A. Monday　B. Morning　C. Autumn

( ) 5. I will _____ dinner for my family.

A. cooking　B. cook　C. cooks

五、按要求完成下列各题。

1. The school trip is in October.

(对画线部分提问)

_____

2. —_____ during (在……期间) the summer vacation? (补全问句)

—We'll go to the Great Wall.

3. Autumn is my favourite season.

(改成一般疑问句)

_____

4. —What will you do for your mum on Mother's Day?



(根据图片回答问题)

—_____

5. —What will you do for your father?

(用 say "Thank you" 回答)

【导学号 76836017】

—_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 5 Let's learn ~ Ask and write

☞（答案见 109 页）

一、写出下列节日所在的月份。

1. 

2. 
3. 

4. 

1. _____ 2. _____

3. _____ 4. _____

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. I'll eat a big dinner _____ my family tomorrow.

A. but B. and C. with

( ) 2. Summer vacation is in _____.

A. July and August B. September C. October

( ) 3. Mid-Autumn Day is in September _____ October.

【导学号 76836018】

A. or B. but C. and

( ) 4. When is the school trip _____ this year?

A. / B. at C. in

三、给句子选择合适的答语。

A. December.
B. We will go to the Great Wall.
C. We will eat mooncakes with my grandma.
D. It's in September.

( ) 1. When is Teachers' Day?

( ) 2. What will you do on Mid-Autumn Day?

( ) 3. Which month do you like best?

( ) 4. What will you do in May?

四、判断下列说法是（T）否（F）正确。

【常识法】

( ) 1. The summer vacation is in June and July.

( ) 2. American Thanksgiving Day is in December.

( ) 3. Children's Day is in August.

( ) 4. I can eat mooncakes on Mid-Autumn Day.

五、按要求完成下列各题。

1. Summer vacation is <u>in July and August</u>.

（对画线部分提问）【导学号 76836019】

_____ _____ summer vacation?

2. I'll <u>eat mooncakes</u> with my family.

（对画线部分提问）【导学号 76836020】

_____ _____ you _____ with your family?

3. We have a singing contest <u>on September 24th</u>.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ you have a singing contest?

4. When is Christmas?（回答问题）

_____

记节日比赛

你说月份，同伴说这个月份里的节日。然后再换角色，最后看谁说得又多又准确。

自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞(答案见109页)

一、找出不同类的一项,将序号填在括号里。

( ) 1. A. riddle B. who C. which

( ) 2. A. Monday B. Tuesday C. May Day

( ) 3. A. Monday B. June C. March

( ) 4. A. April B. autumn C. August

( ) 5. A. birthday B. Children's Day C. National Day

二、读句子,给句子找到合适的图片。



A B C D

( ) 1. We will read riddles.

( ) 2. We will play games and act out stories.

( ) 3. I will make a wish.

( ) 4. I will eat a birthday cake with my parents.

三、选择合适的介词填空。(可重复使用)

at in with

1. My sister lives _____ Sichuan.
2. I will eat a birthday cake _____ the party.
3. I usually play games _____ 6: 00 a. m.
4. We will go to the Great Wall _____ October.
5. We will eat mooncakes _____ my grandparents.

四、给问句选择正确的答语。

( ) 1. When is your birthday?

( ) 2. What will you do for the party?

( ) 3. What will you have in December?

( ) 4. When is China's National Day?

A. I will make a birthday cake.
B. In July.
C. It's in October.
D. We will have a Christmas party.

五、阅读短文,完成请柬。【导学号76836021】

Hello, I'm Amy. Today is April 20th. Tomorrow is my birthday. On my birthday, I want to have a birthday party in my house. I will invite my friends to the party. At the party, we will eat the birthday cake. I like singing very much. So we will sing and dance. We will play many games, too. My parents will give me a big surprise. I will have a great time. The party will start at 7: 30 p. m. Welcome to my birthday party.

My birthday【细节理解法】

WHEN: 1. _____

WHY: 2. _____

WHERE: 3. _____

WHAT: 4. _____

_____

_____

RSVP: Will you come to the party? Please send an email by April 12th.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（六）☞（答案见109页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
单词	四　会	July 七月　August 八月　September 九月 October 十月　November 十一月　December 十二月
	三　会	national 国家的　American 美国的　Thanksgiving 感恩节 Christmas 圣诞节　holiday 假日；节日　game 游戏 riddle 谜；谜语　act 扮演 RSVP (尤用于请柬) 请赐复　by 在……之前
短语	三　会	the Great Wall 长城　National Day 国庆日　act out 把……表演出来
句子	重　点	—When is the trip this year? 今年的旅行在什么时候? —It's in October. We'll go to the Great Wall. 在十月。我们将去长城。
素养提升	必备方法	常识法　细节理解法
	必备能力	能够就某个活动的月份进行问答；能够表达将要举行的活动的内容。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，选择你所听到的词汇。

(　　) 1. A. riddle　B. ride　C. read

(　　) 2. A. Christmas　B. contest　C. China

(　　) 3. A. December　B. October　C. November

(　　) 4. A. National Day　B. Teachers' Day　C. Thanksgiving Day

(　　) 5. A. June　B. July　C. fly

二、听录音，给下列图片排序。



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)



(　　)

三、听短文，判断句子是 (T) 否 (F) 正确。

(　　) 1. Lucy likes April.

(　　) 2. Sarah likes November very much.

(　　) 3. Amy can get gifts on her birthday.

(　　) 4. They usually have a school trip in October.

(　　) 5. Miss White likes July and August.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图，说出表示月份的单词。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

五、图片所表示的节日是在哪个月份，用英语说一说。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、根据简写形式写出下列单词的原形。

1. Aug. _____ 2. Jul. _____ 3. Nov. _____

4. Sept. _____ 5. Oct. _____ 6. Dec. _____

七、为图片选择正确的句子。

1.  2.  3. 

4. 

( ) 1. A. Lucy likes winter vacation.
B. I like summer vacation.

( ) 2. A. We will have a party on Christmas Day.
B. We will have a party on American Thanksgiving Day.

( ) 3. A. The sports meet is in September.
B. The sports meet is in August.

( ) 4. A. I will cook noodles for my mum.
B. I will play the *pipa* for my mum.

八、选择正确的选项补全对话。

A. No, it isn't.
B. What will you do on that day?
C. Which season do you like best?
D. When is your birthday?
E. Because Father's Day is in summer.

Lily: 1. _____
Mike: I like summer best.
Lily: Why do you like summer best?
Mike: 2. _____
Lily: 3. _____
Mike: I will make a card for my father.
Lily: Is your birthday in summer, too?
Mike: 4. _____
Lily: 5. _____
Mike: It's in September.

九、根据短文内容，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

Hi, I'm Lily. I like winter best, because Spring Festival is in winter. It's our Chinese New Year. At Spring Festival, families get together. We always have a big family dinner. We can eat a lot of food and drink a lot of drinks. We eat *jiaozi*, peanuts and sweets. Children wear beautiful clothes and play games. Parents give money to us. Spring Festival is fun. I like Spring Festival very much.

( ) 1. Spring Festival is in spring.
( ) 2. Lily's favourite season is winter.
( ) 3. At Spring Festival, we eat hot dogs and peanuts.
( ) 4. Families will get together at Spring Festival and have a big dinner.
( ) 5. Children will get money from their parents.

十、写作训练。

请以“My favourite festival”为题，用英语描述自己最喜欢的节日。

My favourite festival

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Recycle 1 ☞（答案见 109 页）

一、单项选择。

( ) 1. I can play _____ the snow in winter.
A. and B. in C. to

( ) 2. My sister often eats breakfast _____ 8: 00 _____ the morning.
A. at; on B. in; in C. at; in

( ) 3. Summer is coming. Next season is _____.
A. spring B. fall C. winter

( ) 4. It's 6: 00 p. m. Amy's family are _____ at home. 【导学号 76836022】
A. eating dinner B. eats dinner
C. eating breakfast

( ) 5. When it's summer in China, it's _____ in Australia.
A. spring B. autumn C. winter

二、根据图片完成下列句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

1. I like winter best because I can _____ _____ _____.
2. We often _____ _____ _____ _____ with my parents.
3. We usually _____ _____ in spring near the river.
4. I always _____ my mum _____ dinner on Sundays.
5. A: When do you _____ _____?
B: _____ _____ in the morning.

三、情景对话。选择对应的答句。

( ) 1. Why do you like spring?
( ) 2. Which season does Mike like best?
( ) 3. What do you usually do on Saturday?
( ) 4. When does Zoom usually go on a picnic?
( ) 5. When is your birthday?

A. He does it in Sept.
B. I do my homework.
C. Because I can plant trees.
D. Fall.
E. It's in May.

四、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Today is June 2nd. It's Sunday. It's Amy's birthday. She gets up early at 6: 00 in the morning. After a quick breakfast, her parents take her to the People's Park. They take many photos. In the afternoon, her father buys a big birthday cake for her. Chen Jie and Sarah make a beautiful card for her. They eat the birthday cake together. Amy is very happy.

( ) 1. Today is Saturday.
( ) 2. Chen Jie and Sarah buy a big birthday cake for Amy.
( ) 3. Today is Amy's birthday.
( ) 4. Amy's parents take her to the People's Park.
( ) 5. They eat the birthday cake in the morning.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 109 页）

一、Ann 和 Tom 正在谈论节日，请把谈到的节日图片圈出来，并选出对应日期。（有多余选项）

听力训练

A. May 5th　B. April 2nd　C. October 1st
D. May 1st　E. June 1st　F. August 5th



1. (　　)



2. (　　)



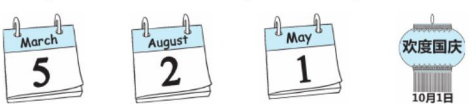
3. (　　)



4. (　　)

二、给句子选择合适的图片。

(　　) 1. May Day is on May 1st.
(　　) 2. When is China's National Day?
(　　) 3. Is Tree Planting Day on March 5th?
(　　) 4. The school trip is on August 2nd.



A　B　C　D

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. There are some _____ days in May.
A. second　B. special　C. specials

(　　) 2. January _____ is New Year's Day.
A. 1st　B. one　C. a first

(　　) 3. When _____ the art show?
A. is　B. are　C. does

(　　) 4. The English show is _____ May 5th.
A. on　B. in　C. to

四、根据表格回答问题。

The reading festival	May 5th
Children's Day	June 1st
May Day	May 1st

1. —When is May Day?
—It's _____.
2. —When is Children's Day?
—_____
3. —Is the reading festival on May 5th this year?
—_____

五、选择正确的选项补全对话。

John: Let's make a festival chart（表格）.
Mike: OK.
John: New Year's Day is in January. Tree Planting Day is 1. _____. When is May Day?
Mike: 2. _____
John: 3. _____
Mike: It's in November. Is Father's Day in May?
John: No. It's 4. _____.
Mike: When is Mid-Autumn Day?
John: 5. _____ We eat mooncakes on that day.

A. It's on May 1st.
B. When is Thanksgiving Day this year?
C. in June
D. in March
E. It's usually in September or October.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Ask and answer

☞（答案见 110 页）

一、根据所给词汇写出同类词。

1. one six _____
2. July May _____
3. fourth third _____
4. school trip sports meet _____

二、判断下列图片与句子或对话是（T）否（F）相符。



( ) 1. —When is the English test?
—It's on November 2nd.



( ) 2. Miss Chen's birthday is on September 3rd.



( ) 3. Our singing contest is on July 1st.



( ) 4. Is the maths test on December 4th?



( ) 5. —When is the school trip?
—It's on March 5th.

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. The third month of a year is _____.
A. January B. February C. March

( ) 2. _____ is the sports meet?
A. When B. Who C. Why

( ) 3. My birthday is in May. It's the _____ month of the year.
A. fourth B. fifth C. third

( ) 4. —How old is your sister?
—She is _____ years old.
A. fifth B. five C. fourth

( ) 5. —When is May Day?
—_____
A. It's on May 5th.
B. It's on May 1st.
C. It's on May.

四、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I have _____ (six) pears in my schoolbag.
2. April is the _____ (four) month of a year.
3. Look at the picture. The _____ (two) baby is me. 【导学号 76836024】
4. Which _____ (one) do you like?

五、仿照例子，写对话。【举一反三法】

例：Dec. 4th maths test 1. Sept. 2nd Miss Chen's birthday 2. Mar. 5th school trip

例：—When is the maths test?
—It's on December 4th.

1. —_____
—_____
2. —_____
—_____

数数小游戏

和你的小伙伴做个“数数小游戏”，你说 one，伙伴说“first，Jan. 1st”，你说 two，伙伴说“second，Feb. 2nd”依次类推到 five；再交换角色玩一玩，看谁说得又快又对。

自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞(答案见 110 页)

一、选出画线部分发音不同的单词。

( ) 1. A. this B. thin C. that

( ) 2. A. there B. mother C. three

( ) 3. A. thanks B. there C. fifth

( ) 4. A. maths B. grandfather C. brother

( ) 5. A. birthday B. they C. with

二、根据图片及句意写单词。

1. I have three storybooks, but I like the _____ one.



2. —Is your mother fat?
—No. She is _____.



3. The girl is my sister and the boy is my _____.



4. Miss Xu is our _____ teacher.



5. —How old are you?
—I am _____ years old.



三、单项选择。

( ) 1. _____ is the fifth day of a week.
A. Sunday B. Thursday C. Saturday

( ) 2. My mother is a _____ teacher.
A. China B. English C. maths

( ) 3. _____ is that woman over there?
A. Who B. When C. Where

( ) 4. We go to school _____ days in a week.
A. May B. fifth C. five

( ) 5. Today is his _____ birthday.
A. three B. third C. four

四、根据上下文或提示完成给妈妈的贺卡。

Dear Mum,

Today is 1. _____ Day. 2. _____ are some pink flowers. 3. _____ are for you. And 4. _____ is a new book. It's for you, too.

I wish (祝你) you happiness and 5. _____ (健康).

Love you!

五、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

【细节理解法】

Look! What a big house! There are three people in it. Amy lives on the first floor. She often gets up early in the morning. Miss Li is an English teacher. She lives on the second floor. She likes autumn best, because Teachers' Day is in September. Mr Wang is very young. He lives on the third floor. He is a PE teacher. He will have a sports meet on April 5th. So he often plays sports in the morning.

( ) 1. There are four people in the house.

( ) 2. Amy lives on the first floor.

( ) 3. Miss Li likes Teachers' Day.

( ) 4. Mr Wang is an English teacher.

( ) 5. The sports meet is on April 5th.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（七）

☞（答案见 110 页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
语音	能掌握 th 的发音规律，能读出并拼写出符合发音规则的单词	th / θ /: three　thin　thirteen　maths th /ð/:　this　that　mother　brother
单词	四　会	first (1st) 第一 (的)　second (2nd) 第二 (的)　third (3rd) 第三 (的) fourth (4th) 第四 (的)　fifth (5th) 第五 (的)
	三　会	special 特殊的；特别的　show 展览　festival 节日
句子	重　点	—When is the sports meet? 运动会是哪天? —It's on April 5th. 它在 4 月 5 日。
素养提升	必备方法	举一反三法　细节理解法　听关键词法
	必备能力	能够询问并回答某节日的日期。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，圈出你所听到的词汇。

1. Tim is (three/thin).
2. The school trip is on (March 4th/March 5th).
3. (This /That) is our music room.
4. The blue (shirt/ shorts) are nice.
5. His (mother/brother) is a science teacher.

二、听录音，按听到的顺序给图片排序。

【听关键词法】



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

三、听录音，选择正确的答案。

(　　) 1. A. It's on May 2nd.
B. It's on June 1st.
C. It's on May 1st.

(　　) 2. A. I will eat mooncakes.
B. I will eat zongzi.
C. I will eat bread.

(　　) 3. A. It's on January 1st.
B. It's on June 1st.
C. It's on October 1st.

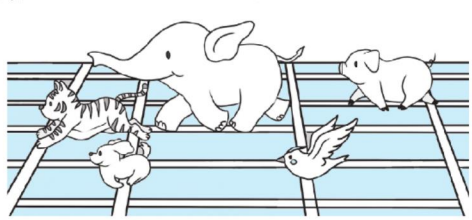
(　　) 4. A. Summer.　B. Thursday.
C. March.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、仿照例子说出其他四个动物的名次。

例：Rabbit is the second.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

五、根据常识填空，补全句子。

1. The _____ month is May.
2. Sunday is the _____ day of a week.
3. April is the _____ month of a year.
4. Mother's Day is on the _____ Sunday in May. 【导学号 76836025】
5. The _____ month is March.

六、读句子，选择对应的图片。



A



B



C



D



E

( ) 1. Christmas is in December.
( ) 2. The reading festival is on May 5th.
( ) 3. Tree Planting Day is in March.
( ) 4. Children's Day is on June 1st.
( ) 5. My birthday is on April 5th.

七、单项选择。

( ) 1. —_____ is the sports meet?
—It's in June.
A. What B. When C. Where

( ) 2. The English test is in _____.
A. June 4th B. March C. May 4th

( ) 3. —When is your father's birthday?
—It's _____ September 3rd.
A. in B. to C. on

( ) 4. _____ is on January 1st.
A. Children's Day
B. China's National Day
C. New Year's Day

( ) 5. This is the _____ Sunday in May.
A. one B. two C. third

八、根据 Sarah 的时间安排，完成任务。

Month	Activity	Date
May	singing contest	4th
	brother's birthday	10th
June	Children's Day	1st
	Chinese test	5th

1. —When is the singing contest?
—It's on _____.
2. —When is Children's Day?
—_____
3. —_____ Sarah's brother's birthday?
—It's on May 10th.
4. —Is the Chinese test on May 5th?
—_____

九、阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

Today is May 5th. Grandpa asks me, "What day is it today?" "It's Sunday." I answer. "What's the date today?" "It's May 5th." "Would you like to eat cakes?" "Yes, of course. Cakes are delicious." So Grandpa goes to the cake shop and buys a big birthday cake.

"Why does Grandpa buy such a big birthday cake?" I think. So I phone my father and tell him about that. "Oh, today is your grandpa's birthday!" my father shouts out. Then we have a birthday party for my grandpa at home in the evening and he is happy.

( ) 1. I don't go to school today.
( ) 2. Today is Saturday.
( ) 3. Grandpa buys a birthday cake.
( ) 4. My grandpa's birthday is in March.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B & C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 110 页）

一、听对话，选择正确的图片，将序号写在横线上。

听力训练

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

F. 

1. Mother's Day is on _____ this year.
2. The boy will _____ for his mum.

二、读一读，看日历填空。

1. 

2. 

3. 

1. My birthday is on _____ _____.
2. Her birthday is on _____ _____.
3. The Chinese test is in _____.

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. My birthday is _____ December 30th. 【规律记忆法】
A. on B. in C. at

( ) 2. August is the _____ month of a year.
A. seventh B. ninth C. eighth

( ) 3. Chen Jie will _____ noodles _____ her mum.
【导学号 76836026】
A. cooks; to B. cook; for
C. cooking; for

( ) 4. There are some special days _____ May.
A. in B. on C. at

( ) 5. There are _____ people in my family.
A. one B. four C. fourth

( ) 6. Today is _____ birthday.
A. my mother B. my mother's
C. my mothers'

四、给下列句子排序。

( ) I will dance with him.
( ) Cool! What will you do for your dad, Lily?
( ) When is your birthday, Jim?
( ) I like dancing, too!
( ) Please come then. We can have a dancing party!
( ) It's on April 5th.
( ) That's my dad's birthday, too.

五、根据实际情况或者图片提示回答问题。

1. When is New Year's Day?

_____

2. Is your birthday on June 7th?

_____

3. When is your mother's birthday?

_____

4. What will you do for your father?



_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

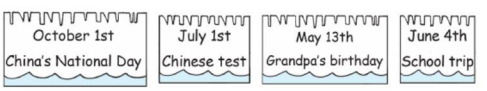
课时 5 Let's learn ~ Look and write

☞(答案见 111 页)

一、按要求写词。

1. twelfth(简写形式) _____
2. twenty-third(基数词) _____
3. thirty-first(简写形式) _____
4. twenty-two(序数词) _____
5. twenty(序数词) _____

二、根据日程表,判断下列句子是(T)否(F)正确。



( ) 1. Grandpa's birthday is on May 13th.
( ) 2. The school trip is on June 4th.
( ) 3. The Chinese test is on June 11th.
( ) 4. China's National Day is on July 7th.

三、选择合适的数词填空。

1. Today is my sister's _____ (twenty/twentieth) birthday.

【导学号 76836027】

2. There are _____ (twenty-eight/twenty-eighth) days in February this year.
3. Mother's Day is on the _____ (two/second) Sunday in May.
4. My baby brother is _____ (ten/tenth) months old.

四、单项选择。

( ) 1. —When is your birthday?
—It's _____ April 5th.
A. in B. on C. of

( ) 2. My birthday is on September _____.
A. five B. twenty-five C. 15th

( ) 3. —_____ will you do for your mum on her birthday?
—I'll make a card.
A. What B. How C. Where

五、给下列对话选择相应的图片。



A B C D

( ) 1. —When is your birthday?
—My birthday is on July 21st.
( ) 2. —When is Mum's birthday?
—It's on February 23rd.
( ) 3. —When is Grandma's birthday?
—It's on April 23rd.
( ) 4. —When is Grandpa's birthday?
—It's on October 12th.

六、读一读,根据自己的家庭情况补全短文。

Hello. There are 1. _____ people in my family. I am 2. _____ years old. My birthday is on 3. _____. My parents are very young. My 4. _____ birthday is on 5. _____. My 6. _____ birthday is on 7. _____. I love my family very much.

问生日

和同桌互相问家人生日。用"When is ...birthday?"问对方家人的生日,对方用"...birthday is on ..."来回答;然后交换角色。最后将对方家人的生日做成表格。

相互评价:☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞（答案见 111 页）

一、选出不同类的一项。【分类记忆法】

( ) 1. A. two B. three C. third

( ) 2. A. noise B. go C. walk

( ) 3. A. diary B. letter C. cute

( ) 4. A. kitten B. fur C. rabbit

( ) 5. A. special B. play C. funny

二、给下面的句子选择合适的图片。

( ) 1. They are pink because they are very young.

( ) 2. They make noises when they are hungry.

( ) 3. They have white fur now.

( ) 4. The kittens can walk now.



A. B. C. D.

三、用所给单词的合适形式填空。

1. Sarah's cat has _____ (two) new kittens.

2. They can walk on July _____ (three).

3. Our classroom is on the _____ (six) floor.

4. The kittens are _____ (twelfth) days old.

四、按要求完成句子。

1. eyes, on, are, 22nd, their, April, open (.)（连词成句）

_____

2. has, two, my, new, cat, kittens (.)（连词成句）

_____

3. can, play, Robin, they, with (.)（连词成句）

_____

4. When is your birthday?（回答问题）

_____

五、阅读短文，完成短文后的题目。

Today is March 15th. I put a flower seed（种子）into a big pot. I put some water into it too. Now it's in the sun.

Today is April 1st. I am so excited. I can see a sprout（芽）. It's small and green. It's so lovely. I water it again and put it in the sun.

Today is April 20th. My plant has two green leaves. I water it every day. And I make sure it can get lots of sun.

Today is May 1st. My plant is one month old. It's tall and strong, but it has no flowers. Oh, come on. I can't wait.

（一）在横线上填入正确的日期。

1. I plant a flower seed on _____.

2. On _____, the plant has a sprout.

3. On _____, the plant has two green leaves.

（二）选择正确的答案。

( ) 4. How old is the plant on May 1st?

A. One year old.

B. One month old.

C. One day old.

( ) 5. What's the plant like on May 1st?

A. It's tall and strong.

B. It's tall and thin.

C. It has a small and green sprout.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

周末加油站(八)

(答案见 111 页)

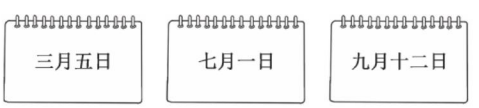
知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内容
单词	四会	twelfth (12th) 第十二 (的)　twentieth (20th) 第二十 (的) twenty-first (21st) 第二十一 (的)　twenty-third (23rd) 第二十三 (的) thirtieth (30th) 第三十 (的)
	三会	kitten 小猫　diary 日记　still 仍然; 依旧; 还是 noise 声音; 响声; 噪音　fur (某些动物的) 浓密的软毛 open 开着的　walk 行走
句子	重点	—When is your birthday? 你的生日是哪天? —My birthday is on April 4th. 我的生日是 4 月 4 日。
素养提升	必备方法	规律记忆法　分类记忆法　抓关键信息法
	必备能力	能询问并回答生日日期有关的内容; 能正确运用序数词。

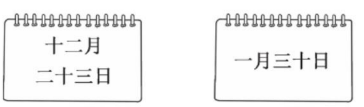
Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，判断图片与所听内容是 (T) 否 (F) 相符。



1. (　)　2. (　)　3. (　)



4. (　)　5. (　)

二、听录音，选择你所听到的单词。

(　) 1. A. twentieth　B. twelfth　C. twelve

(　) 2. A. thirtieth　B. thirteenth　C. twenty-third

(　) 3. A. special　B. still　C. second

(　) 4. A. ten　B. pen　C. open

(　) 5. A. fur　B. fool　C. floor

三、听录音，选择内容补全句子。

30th　13th　20th　12th　noises　nose
Mike's　John's　test　contest

1. It's on November _____.
2. When is the English _____?
3. Monday is his _____ birthday.
4. They make _____ when they are hungry.
5. _____ birthday is on May 23rd.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图，读日期。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

五、我会读句子。

1. The boy's birthday is on May 12th.
2. The woman's birthday is on October 22nd.
3. My teacher's birthday is on Sept. 18th.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、单项选择。

( ) 1. I can buy some fruit for both _____ you.
A. at B. of C. with

( ) 2. Tree Planting Day is on _____.
A. March 12th B. March 8th
C. March 12nd

( ) 3. The baby _____ when he is hungry.
A. makes noises B. make noise
C. make a noise

七、用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. Tom is _____ (twenty) years old.
2. Welcome to my _____ (eight) birthday.
3. There are _____ (thirteenth) students in my class.
4. December is the _____ (twelve) month of a year. 【导学号 76836028】

八、读一读，选择合适的答语。

( ) 1. What will you do for your father?
( ) 2. Is your birthday on October 12th?
( ) 3. When is your birthday?
( ) 4. When is the art show?

A. My birthday is on February 21st.
B. It's on May 1st.
C. I'll sing a song for him.
D. Yes, it is.

九、看图片，照样子写问答句。

例：August 17th Tim's birthday
—When is Tim's birthday?
—It's on August 17th.

1. May 21st Tim's mother's birthday
2. March 12th Tree Planting Day
3. December 25th Christmas Day

1. —_____
—_____
2. —_____
—_____
3. —_____
—_____

十、阅读短文，按要求完成题目。

There are some special days in this term（学期）. On September 10th, we have Teachers' Day. Mid-Autumn Day is in September, too. It's on September 24th this year. China's National Day is on October 1st. American Thanksgiving Day is on the fourth Thursday in November. The dancing contest is on November 11th. Each month has one or two special days.

（一）根据短文内容回答问题。【导学号 76836029】

1. How many special days are there in this term?
_____
2. Is American Thanksgiving Day on Friday?
_____

（二）根据短文内容完成表格。【抓关键信息法】

Special Days	Dates
	September 10th
China's National Day	
Mid-Autumn Day	
The dancing contest	

十一、书面表达。

用学过的日期表达法来写一写你的家庭成员的生日情况。

_____
_____
_____
_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 111 页）

一、找书包。仔细听对话，帮 Lucy 找到她需要的书包。

听力训练



A



B



C

Lucy's schoolbag is in Picture _____.

二、判断下面的图片与句子是（T）否（F）相符。

(　　) 1. This is Lily's bike. It's not mine.



(　　) 2. The blue schoolbag is his.



(　　) 3. This beautiful skirt is Mike's.



(　　) 4. The classroom is ours.



三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. The picture _____ a mountain is mine.　【导学号 76836030】

A. by　　B. of　　C. for

(　　) 2. The new shoes are _____.

A. Chen Jie　　B. Chen Jie's

C. Chen Jies'

(　　) 3. —_____ ruler is it?

—It's mine.

A. Whose　　B. Who　　C. What

(　　) 4. —Mike, is this _____ bag?

—No, I think it's _____.【排除法】

A. your; her　　B. yours; his

C. your; hers

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. This is Lily's yellow dress.（对画线部分提问）

_____ yellow dress _____ _____?

2. Are these ours?（作肯定回答）

_____

3. They are Lucy's books.（改为同义句）

These _____ are _____.

五、选词补全对话。

Mr Li: Whose bike is it? Sarah, is it 1. _____ (your/yours)?

Sarah: No, it's not 2. _____ (my/mine). 3. _____ (My/Mine) bike is red, but this bike is blue.

Mr Li: Is it Amy's?

Sarah: Maybe it's 4. _____ (her/hers). I'm not sure.

Mr Li: Amy, is this 5. _____ (your/yours) bike?

Amy: No. Mine is yellow. Oh, it's 6. _____ (Mike/ Mike's). 7. _____ (He/His) bike is blue.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Look, say and complete

☞（答案见 111 页）

一、给下列单词找到合适的家。

he	I	it	my	our	mine	theirs
we	they	your	ours	yours		

1. she

2. her

3. hers

二、读句子，给图片选出相应的句子。

A. Look! That dog is his.

B. These rulers are Li Ming's.

C. The dog is theirs.

D. The boy's cat is so cute.

E. This phone is hers.



1. (　　)



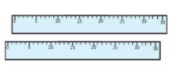
2. (　　)



3. (　　)



4. (　　)



5. (　　)

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. —_____ book is that?
—It's my cousin's.
A. Who　　B. What　　C. Whose

(　　) 2. —Whose coat is this?
—It is _____. 【导学号 76836031】
A. mine　　B. my　　C. me

(　　) 3. _____ book is in the classroom. _____ is here.
A. Mine; Your　　B. My; Yours
C. My; Your

四、用所给词的适当形式填空。【口诀记忆法】

1. The jacket on the chair is _____ (I).
2. This is _____ (she) book. That book is _____ (he).
3. That yellow picture is _____ (you).
4. —Are these pens _____ (our)?
—No, they aren't. They are _____ (John).
5. —_____ (who) eraser is that?
—It's _____ (Amy) eraser.

五、根据例句完成同义句转换。【导学号 76836032】

例：It's my apple. ⟺ The apple is mine.

1. It's her book. →_____
2. _____ ←The toy is yours.
3. This is their classroom. →_____
4. These are John's storybooks. →_____

分铅笔盒

你和你的小伙伴一起来做游戏。把每个人的铅笔盒都装进一个书包，用句型“Is this red/ blue … pencil box yours/ his/ hers/ Li Mei's …?”给每个铅笔盒找主人。轮流做一遍，看谁做得最好。

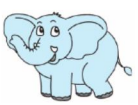
自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞(答案见 112 页)

一、读句子,根据图示及首字母提示填单词。


1.


2.


3.



4.

1. Its t_____ is long.
2. She likes to s_____.
3. The girl often t_____ there.
4. This is i_____.

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. _____ storybooks yours?
A. Is it B. Are these C. These are

( ) 2. Yes, it's _____ picture. It's _____. 【导学号 76836033】
A. Amy's; her B. Amy; her
C. Amy's; hers

( ) 3. 选出画线部分发音不同的单词。
A. think B. sing C. ring

( ) 4. —Whose picture _____ it?
—It's Mike's.
A. is B. are C. be

( ) 5. —_____ ink is it?
—It's Wu Yifan's.
A. Who's B. Who C. Whose

三、从短文中找出含有画线部分读音的单词。

Look at the elephant. His trunk is very long. He is eating and dancing. He can draw with ink. In the morning, he always drinks water beside the river. I think he can sing a song.

1. thank: _____
2. playing: _____

四、读句子,选图片。

( ) 1. Chen Jie is singing.
A.  B. 

( ) 2. He is jumping.
A.  B. 

( ) 3. The boy is drinking water.
A.  B. 

( ) 4. The bear is eating.
A.  B. 

五、选择方框中合适的选项补全对话。

A. It's Mike's.
B. Look! Here it is!
C. No, it's not my shirt.
D. Mine is white.

Peter: Is this shirt yours, Sarah?
Sarah: 1. _____
Peter: Whose shirt is it?
Sarah: 2. _____ Mike has a red shirt. He likes red.
Peter: What colour is your shirt?
Sarah: 3. _____ Where is my shirt?
Peter: 4. _____ Put it in your bag, please.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（九）

☞（答案见 112 页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
语音	能掌握 ng 和 nk 的发音规律，能读出并拼写出符合发音规则的单词	ng /ŋ/: long　sing　ring　young nk /ŋk/ : think　ink　trunk　pink
单词	四　会	mine 我的　yours 你（们）的　his 他的　hers 她的 theirs 他们的；她们的；它们的　ours 我们的
句子	重　点	1. The yellow picture is mine. 那幅黄颜色的画是我的。 2. Are these all ours? 这些都是我们的（画）吗? 3. —Whose is it? 这是谁的? —It's Zhang Peng's. 是张鹏的。
素养提升	必备方法	排除法　口诀记忆法　理解句意法
	必备能力	能够询问和回答某物是否属于某人。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听句子，选出句子中所包含的单词。【理解句意法】

( ) 1. A. sing　B. ring　C. ink

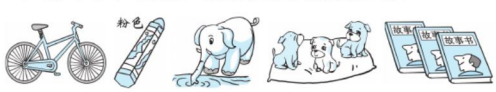
( ) 2. A. their　B. theirs　C. there

( ) 3. A. here　B. hers　C. her

( ) 4. A. Amy's　B. Ann's　C. John's

( ) 5. A. think　B. pink　C. trunk

二、听句子，将主人和相应的物品连线。



1　2　3　4　5



A　B　C　D　E

三、听录音，补全句子或对话。

1. —_____ English book is that?
—It's his.
2. —Whose storybook is this?
—It's _____.
3. —Is this _____ pen?
—Yes, it is. Thank you.
4. My dear, it's not only your dog. It's also _____.
5. Oh, these rabbits are _____.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图，仿照例子说句子。

例： (I)　This dog is mine.

1. 

(he)

2. 
(they)

3. 
(you)

4. 
(we)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、读句子。

1. Wow! That picture of Beijing is beautiful.
2. —Are these all ours? —Yes, they are.
3. He is thinking.
4. That bird sings all day and has a pink mouth.
5. The young elephant drinks water with its long trunk.

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、写出相应的名词性物主代词。

1. her _____ 2. his _____
3. my _____ 4. our _____
5. their _____ 6. your _____

七、单项选择。

( ) 1. That is not your ruler. It's _____.
A. his B. her C. their

( ) 2. This schoolbag isn't _____. I think it's Amy's. 【导学号 76836034】
A. my B. mine C. your

( ) 3. _____ bottle is Mike's?
A. Which B. Whose C. Who

( ) 4. _____ your English book?
A. Is it B. Are those
C. Are there

( ) 5. _____ crayons are long, but _____ are short. 【导学号 76836035】
A. Their; our B. Theirs; ours
C. Their; ours

八、看图,补全对话。

1. 
2. 
3. 

1. —Are these your books?
—Yes, they are _____.
2. —Look! This is our new classroom.
—Yes, it is _____.
3. —_____ balloons are these?
—They're _____.

九、按要求完成下列各题。

1. The green picture is mine.
(对画线部分提问)【导学号 76836036】
_____ is the green picture?
2. Whose storybooks are those?
(用 theirs 回答)
_____
3. Are these your pens?(作肯定回答)
_____
4. That is her English book.(改为同义句)
_____

十、阅读表格,填入合适的词完成对话。

	book	dog	pens
Amy	√		
Jack		√	
Amy and Jack			√

1. —Whose book is that?
—It's Amy's. It's _____ book. The book is _____.
2. —Whose dog is that?
—It's _____. It's _____ dog. The dog is _____.
3. —Whose pens are those?
—They are _____. They are _____ pens. The pens are _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B & C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 112 页）

一、根据对话选图片。

听力训练


A.

B.

C.

D.

答案：(　　)

二、下面的小动物在做什么？ 请连线。

1. 
2. 
3. 

A. The bear is sleeping.

B. The dog is playing with a ball.

C. The monkey is eating an apple.

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. —Can I play with the dog?

—_____ 【导学号 76836037】

A. No, you don't.　B. Yes, you can't.

C. No, you can't.

(　　) 2. —Is he drinking water?

—_____ 【导学号 76836038】

A. No, he isn't.　B. Yes, he does.

C. No, she isn't.

(　　) 3. —Is he _____?

—No, he isn't. He is eating.

A. eating　B. drinking water

C. drink water

(　　) 4. —_____ is John's dog?

—It is on the sofa.

A. Whose　B. When　C. Where

(　　) 5. Can you _____ him _____ the park?

A. take; in　B. play; to　C. take; to

四、看图补全句子。

1. 
2. 

1. —Look! Is the elephant eating?

—No, it isn't. It's _____ _____.

2. —Is the boy drinking water?

—No, _____ _____. He _____ _____ a banana.

五、选择正确的选项补全对话。

A: 1. _____

B: He's in the kitchen.

A: Is he cooking lunch?

B: 2. _____

A: Is he eating lunch?

B: No, he isn't. 3. _____

A: Look! There is a rabbit over there.

B: 4. _____

A: Can I play with the rabbit?

B: 5. _____

A. It's Mike's.
B. He's drinking water.
C. Of course!
D. No, he isn't.
E. Where is Mike?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时5 Let's learn ~ Let's play

☞(答案见112页)

一、读一读,找出不同类的单词。

( ) 1. A. walking B. sing C. swimming

( ) 2. A. mine B. hers C. your

( ) 3. A. your B. ours C. their

( ) 4. A. listening B. eating C. sleep

( ) 5. A. excited B. read C. jump

二、看图片,仿照例子写动词的-ing形式。





例:playing 1. _____ 2. _____





3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

三、单项选择。

( ) 1. She _____ running _____ her father.

A. are; with B. is; with

C. do; with

( ) 2. The girl is _____ in the park.

A. jumping B. jumps C. jump

( ) 3. —_____ the dog sleeping?

—No, it is eating.

A. Is B. Does C. Are

( ) 4. What _____ the pandas doing?

A. is B. are C. am

( ) 5. It's 7 o'clock now. He is _____ breakfast. 【导学号76836039】

A. drinking B. has C. eating

四、给问句选择合适的答句。【抓关键信息法】

( ) 1. Are these rabbits jumping?

( ) 2. Can I play with him now?

( ) 3. Where is the dog?

( ) 4. Is he drinking water?

A. Yes, he is.
B. No, you can't.
C. Yes, they are.
D. It is in the bedroom.

五、看图,补全或写出答语。

1. 
2. 
3. 

1. A: There's a cat over there. Is it jumping?

B: No. It is _____.

2. A: Are the rabbits drinking water?

B: No. They are _____.

3. A: Look there! What is the mother monkey doing?

B: _____.

A: What about the baby monkey?

B: _____.

我是小记者

请你的小伙伴们做不同动作,有的跑,有的跳……然后你作为小记者汇报每个小伙伴正在做的动作。用上现在进行时。看看谁汇报得最准确。

相互评价:☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞（答案见 112 页）

一、看图片，选择正确的答句。



1. 2. 3. 4.

( ) 1. What is Amy doing?

A. She is dancing.

B. She is jumping.

( ) 2. What is the bird doing?

A. It is flying. B. It is singing.

( ) 3. What are the monkeys doing?

A. They are taking pictures.

B. They are eating.

( ) 4. What is Wu Yifan doing?

A. He is reading. B. He is sleeping.

二、选词并用其适当形式填空。

like want quiet excited copy

1. Do you _____ to be a bird?
2. My brother is _____. He will go to a summer camp.
3. Be _____! The baby is sleeping.
4. The boy is jumping _____ a monkey.
5. Look! The monkey is _____ you.

三、从表格中选择合适的单词，完成对话。（注意大小写）

his	her	my	their	our	your
his	hers	mine	theirs	ours	yours

1. Amy: Whose maths book is this?

John: It's Miss Green's book.

It's _____ book. It's _____.

Amy: Are those our books?

John: Yes. They are _____.

2. Grandpa: Whose rabbits are those?

Robin: They are Mike's.

Grandpa: Oh, those are _____ rabbits.

3. Wu Yifan: Where is my pen?

Sarah: Is this _____ pen?

Wu Yifan: Yes, it's _____. Thank you.

四、阅读短文，回答问题。

Today is Children's Day. There is a show in the zoo. Many children are in the zoo. Look at the animals. They are so cute. The birds are flying and singing in the sky. The tigers are running. The pandas are climbing trees. They are good climbers. The kangaroos are jumping. Look at the mother elephant and the baby elephant. The mother elephant is eating bananas and the baby elephant is drinking water with its trunk. Look! What are those? They are two lions. They are playing with a ball.

1. Where are the children?

_____

2. What are the birds doing?

_____

3. What are the lions doing?

_____

4. What's the mother elephant doing?

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

周末加油站(十)

(答案见112页)

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
单词	四　会	climbing (climb 的-ing 形式) (正在) 攀登;　攀爬 eating (eat 的-ing 形式) (正在) 吃　playing (play 的-ing 形式) (正在) 玩耍 jumping (jump 的-ing 形式) (正在) 跳 drinking (drink 的-ing 形式) (正在) 喝 (水) sleeping (sleep 的-ing 形式) (正在) 睡觉
	三　会	each 每一;　各个　other 其他　excited 兴奋的;　激动的　like 像……那样
短语	三　会	each other 相互
句子	重　点	—Is he drinking water? 他在喝水吗? —No, he isn't. He's eating. 不是。 他在吃东西。
素养提升	必备方法	抓关键信息法　听关键词法　联系上下文法
	必备能力	能够询问并回答某人是否正在做某事。

Part 1 Listening

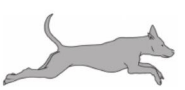
听力训练

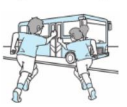
一、听录音,为下列图片排序。

【听关键词法】


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)

二、听录音,选择你所听到的句子。

(　　) 1. A. Mike is reading.
B. Mike is jumping.

(　　) 2. A. The book is his.　B. It's her book.

(　　) 3. A. Can I play with him in the park?
B. Can you take him to the park?

(　　) 4. A. I'm walking like a bear.
B. I'm dancing like a bear.

三、听录音,填单词补全对话。

Lily: What are you doing here, Jim?

Jim: I am 1. _____ with my cat.

Lily: Is the picture 2. _____?

Jim: Yes, it is 3. _____. It's my cat.

Lily: Where is your dog?

Jim: It's in the room.

Lily: Is it 4. _____?

Jim: No, it isn't. It's 5. _____.

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、看图,仿照样子说一说。

例: 
drink—drinking
The elephant is drinking water.

1. 

2. 

3. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part 3 Reading and writing

五、照样子，看图补全对话。

例：—Is the dog eating / drinking water?



—Yes, it is. /No, it isn't.

It is eating in the kitchen.

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. —_____ the cat _____?
   —Yes, _____.
2. —Is the elephant swimming?
   —No, _____. It is _____ by the _____.
3. —_____ the cats _____?
   —Yes, _____.
4. —Are the monkeys eating apples?
   —No, _____. _____.

六、从方框中选择合适的选项补全对话。

【联系上下文法】

A. Is it eating now?
B. Is it yours?
C. It's playing with a ball.
D. Can we play with your dog, Mrs Green?
E. Whose dog is it?

Lucy: That white dog is so cute. 1. _____
Lily: No, it isn't.
Lucy: 2. _____
Lily: It's Mrs Green's. 3. _____
Lucy: No, it isn't. 4. _____
Lucy & Lily: 5. _____
Mrs Green: Sure. Come here, dear.

七、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Today is Sunday. Mike's family are at home. His father Mr Black is reading a book in the living room. His mother is cooking in the kitchen. His brother Tom and his friend John are playing chess in the bedroom. His grandpa and grandma are watching TV in the living room. Where is Mike? Oh, he is in the garden. He is taking pictures.

( ) 1. It's _____ today.
A. Sunday B. sunny C. Saturday

( ) 2. Mr Black is _____.
A. cooking B. watching TV
C. reading a book

( ) 3. Tom and John are _____ in the bedroom.
A. sleeping B. playing chess
C. watching TV

( ) 4. Mike's grandpa is in the _____.
A. kitchen B. study C. living room

( ) 5. _____ is cooking in the kitchen.
A. Mike's grandma B. Mike's mother
C. John's mother

八、写作训练。

下面是小明周末在动物园拍的照片，请你用现在进行时描述照片中的情景。



_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

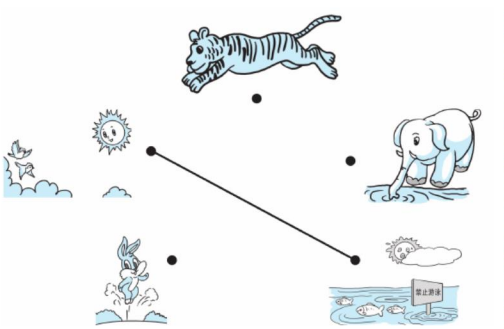
Part A

课时 1 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 113 页）

一、连图形。小动物们都在干什么，按顺序连一连，看看是什么图形。

听力训练



二、给句子选对应的图片。

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

(　　) 1. They are having lunch.

(　　) 2. The monkey is climbing the tree.

(　　) 3. The cat is sleeping.

(　　) 4. We are having a maths class.

(　　) 5. She is watching TV.

三、单项选择。

(　　) 1. Look _____ the big tiger. It's so strong!

A. for　　B. at　　C. on

(　　) 2. The boys _____ jumping on the playground.　【导学号 76836040】

A. is　　B. am　　C. are

(　　) 3. —Do you see _____ birds in the tree?

—No, but I see _____ monkeys in it.　【导学号 76836041】

A. some; any　　B. any; some

C. any; any

(　　) 4. The monkey is playing with _____ mother.

A. it's　　B. its　　C. it is

四、给问句选答句。

(　　) 1. What are the pandas doing?

(　　) 2. What is the dog doing?

(　　) 3. What are you doing?

(　　) 4. What is Amy doing?

(　　) 5. What is Tom doing?

A. He is playing football.
B. They are climbing trees.
C. She is singing and dancing.
D. I'm doing my homework.
E. It's running on the grass.

五、仿照例子写句子。【规律记忆法】

例：　(I)　I am watching TV at home.

1. 　(we)

2. 　(she)

3. 　(he)

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 2 Let's learn ~ Look and say

☞（答案见 113 页）

一、给图片选短语。






1. (　　)　2. (　　)　3. (　　)




4. (　　)　5. (　　)

A. reading an English book

B. eating lunch at 12 o'clock

C. having a Chinese class

D. listening to music

E. doing morning exercises

二、单项选择。

(　　) 1. Chen Fang is _____ a class.

A. having　　B. has　　C. have

(　　) 2. What _____ the people doing in the park?　【导学号 76836042】

A. is　　B. has　　C. are

(　　) 3. —What are the students doing?

—_____

A. I am eating lunch.

B. They are eating lunch.

C. We are eating lunch.

(　　) 4. —_____

—He is cleaning the room.

A. What is Mike doing?

B. What is Mike's grandma doing?

C. What is Lily doing?

三、看图，照样子写句子。

例：

It's 4: 00 p. m. She is listening to music.

1. 　2. 　3. 

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

四、选择正确的选项补全对话。【问答配对法】

Alice: 1. _____

David: It's 7: 00 a. m.

Alice: 2. _____

David: He is doing morning exercises.

Alice: What's Chen Jie doing?

David: 3. _____

Alice: What's Li Ming doing?

David: 4. _____

Alice: Oh! It's 7: 30 a. m. I must go to my class.

A. He is reading a book.
B. What time is it now?
C. She is listening to music.
D. What's Zhang Peng doing?

照片展示

你和小伙伴们各自带一些家人日常生活的照片，并给其他小伙伴介绍照片中的人物在几点正在做什么。

自我评价：☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时 3 Let's spell

☞(答案见 113 页)

一、判断每组单词画线部分读音是(T)否(F)一致。

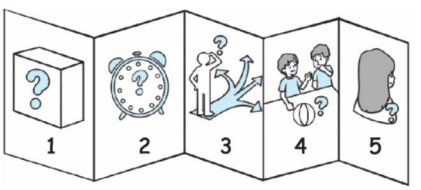
( ) 1. A. whale B. wheat

( ) 2. A. which B. whom

( ) 3. A. what B. who

( ) 4. A. why B. when

二、看图片,写出以"wh"开头的单词。



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

三、给下列句子选合适的图片。

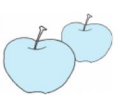
( ) 1. What time is it?

A.  B. 

( ) 2. Where are you going?

A.  B. 

( ) 3. Which apple is the monkey's?

A.  B. 

( ) 4. White is my favorite color.

A. 

B. 

四、选词填空。

What When Why Whose Which

1. —_____ do you go to school?
—At 7: 30 a. m.
2. —_____ do you often do on the weekend?
—I often do my homework.
3. —_____ season do you like best?
—I like summer best.
4. —_____ do you like summer?
—Because I can go swimming in the sea.
5. —_____ ruler is it?
—It's mine.

五、阅读理解,将人物与相应的图片连线。

It's a nice day. The sun is shining. Miss Li and the students are playing in the park.

Miss Li: Where is Mike?
Lily: He is under the tree. He and Amy are reading a book.
Miss Li: What is Zhang Peng doing?
Lily: He is drawing a picture.
Miss Li: What is Sarah doing?
Lily: She is listening to music.
Miss Li: Is John dancing?
Lily: Yes, he is dancing.

Mike Amy Zhang Peng Sarah John

A.  B.  C.  D. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

周末加油站（十一）

☞（答案见 113 页）

知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内　容
语音	能掌握 wh 的发音规律，能读出并拼写出符合发音规则的单词	wh /w/: what　when　where wh /h/ : who　whose
单词	三　会	bamboo 竹子　its (指事物、动物或幼儿) 它的；他的；她的
短语	四　会	doing morning exercises (正在) 做早操　having ...class (正在) 上……课 eating lunch (正在) 吃午饭　reading a book (正在) 看书 listening to music (正在) 听音乐
句子	重　点	1. —What are they doing? 它们在干什么? —They're eating lunch! 它们在吃午饭! 2. —What's the little monkey doing? 那只小猴子在干什么? —It's playing with its mother! 它在和妈妈玩耍!
素养提升	必备方法	规律记忆法　问答配对法
	必备能力	能够询问某人正在做什么并回答。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音，按听到的顺序给图片排序。


（　）


（　）


（　）


（　）


（　）

二、听录音，选择最佳答语。

（　）1. A. Yes, I am.　B. Yes, I do.

（　）2. A. They are eating lunch.
B. He is eating lunch.

（　）3. A. It's playing with a ball.
B. She plays.

（　）4. A. I am watching TV.
B. They're reading a book.

（　）5. A. She is in the classroom.
B. She's swimming.

三、听录音，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。

（　）1. It's Sunday today.

（　）2. The children are at the zoo.

（　）3. The pandas are sleeping. They are cute.

（　）4. Wu Yifan likes monkeys.

（　）5. The baby elephant is drinking water.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

四、照样子，说对话。

例：they/ have an English class

—What are they doing?

—They are having an English class.

1. he/ eat lunch　　2. Lily/ read a book
3. we/ do morning exercises
4. the students/read books

Part 3 Reading and writing

五、单项选择。

( ) 1. —_____ is the panda eating?
—It is eating bamboo.
A. How　　B. What　　C. Where

( ) 2. Mike is _____ a book in the study.
A. reading　B. looking　C. see

( ) 3. Do you see _____ monkeys?
A. a　　B. any　　C. an

( ) 4. Look! The monkeys _____ the trees.　【导学号 76836043】
A. climb　B. are climbing
C. is climbing

( ) 5. —What is Sam doing? —_____
A. He is having an English class.
B. He likes reading books.
C. He is in the kitchen.

六、看图，回答问题。

1. What is the girl doing?

_____



2. What are the children doing?

_____



3. Are the students having a maths class?



_____

4. Is the boy eating lunch at 11 o'clock?



_____

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

It's Sunday. It's sunny and warm. The children are having a happy time. Look! Who's that girl? She's Amy's sister. She's playing with her dog. Amy is drawing pictures. What are the boys doing? John and Mike are playing football. Tom and Tim are flying a kite. What's Mary doing? She's reading books in the library. Is Sarah reading books, too? No, she's having a piano class. What a nice day!

( ) 1. What day is it today?
A. It's sunny.　　B. It's Sunday.
C. It's Saturday.

( ) 2. What is Amy's sister doing?
A. She's drawing pictures.
B. She's sleeping.
C. She's playing with her dog.

( ) 3. Where is Mary?
A. She's in the library.
B. She's at school.
C. She's at home.

( ) 4. What is Sarah doing?
A. She's listening to music.
B. She's reading books.
C. She's having a piano class.

( ) 5. Are all the boys playing football?
A. No, they aren't.　B. Yes, they are.
C. No, we aren't.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part B&C

课时 4 Let's try ~ Let's talk

☞（答案见 114 页）

一、选图片。Lily 和 Tim 正在图书馆里，根据他们的对话选出 Lily 要注意的事项。

听力训练

A.  B.  C. 

D.  E.  F. 

二、看图片，选句子。

A. Talk quietly! B. No eating!
C. Work quietly! D. Keep your desk clean!

1.  ( ) 2.  ( ) 3.  ( ) 4.  ( )

三、选择正确的单词填空。

eating keep quiet show

1. Can you _____ me the way to the hospital?
2. Look at the sign! It says "No _____!"
3. Please keep _____ in the classroom.
4. Please _____ your desk and room clean.

四、单项选择。

( ) 1. He is sleeping. Please talk _____.
A. quiet B. quite C. quietly

( ) 2. No _____. 【导学号 76836044】
A. to talk B. talking C. eat

( ) 3. _____ your bedroom clean.
A. Keep B. Keeping C. Keeps

( ) 4. Do you have _____ to do?
A. anything else B. else anything
C. anything other

五、小明是图书馆的志愿者，帮他选一选下面的情景该怎样说。

( ) 1. 他想告诉同学在图书馆不能吃东西，可以说：
A. No talking! B. No eating!

( ) 2. 有同学在图书馆大声喧哗，他可以说：
A. Talk quietly! B. No drinking!

( ) 3. 他想告诉新来同学要保持桌面干净，可以说：
A. Keep your desk clean!
B. Keep your clothes clean!

( ) 4. 有同学问他是否可以在图书馆写作业，他可以说：
A. Anything else? B. Of course.

六、按要求完成句子。

1. What's your name?（根据实际情况回答问题）

_____

2. your, clean, keep, desk (.)（连词成句）

_____

3. show, can, me, you, English, books, the (?)（连词成句）

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时5 Let's learn ~ Look, match and say

☞(答案见114页)

一、根据图片,补全短语。




1. no _____ 2. keep _____




3. keep _____ 4. take _____



5. keep _____

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. —We are talking in the library.
—_____ 【导学号76836045】
A. Talk quiet! B. Talk loudly!
C. Talk quietly!

( ) 2. I'm _____ an email.
A. writing B. writeing C. waiting

( ) 3. This toy box is for you. _____ it clean.
A. Do B. Have C. Keep

( ) 4. —Can we play music with you?
—OK. _____. 【导学号76836046】
A. Take turns B. Take turn
C. Takes turns

( ) 5. _____ he do any kung fu?
A. Do B. Can C. Is

三、给下面的行为选择合适的提示语。

( ) 1. The bus is coming. We will get on the bus.

( ) 2. She is talking in the hospital.

( ) 3. They are walking on the road.

( ) 4. He is drawing pictures on the wall.

( ) 5. Amy is reading a book in class.

A. Keep the wall clean.
B. Take turns.
C. Work quietly.
D. Talk quietly.
E. Keep to the right.

四、连词成句。

1. the, to, right, keep (.)

_____

2. desk, keep, clean, your (.)

_____

3. we, your, can, crayons, use (?)

_____

4. is, in, library, he, the, talking (.)

_____

5. are, bridge, walking, on, they, the (.)

_____

我知道怎么做

和你的小伙伴合作,一个人说情景,另一个说此情景应该怎么做。例如:伙伴说:"We are playing a game."你说:"Take turns."然后交换角色,看看谁说得多。

相互评价:☆☆☆☆☆

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时 6 Read and write ~ Story time

☞（答案见 114 页）

一、找出每组中不同类的单词。【分类记忆法】

( ) 1. A. anything B. talking C. running

( ) 2. A. sushi B. sure C. cake

( ) 3. A. keep B. take C. quietly

( ) 4. A. lunch B. talk C. walk

( ) 5. A. Spanish B. China C. Canadian

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. Can you teach _____?

A. I B. me C. my

( ) 2. Can you _____ music with me?

A. to play B. playing C. play

( ) 3. —What are they doing? —_____

A. They clean their rooms.

B. He is eating.

C. They are reading books.

( ) 4. —What are you _____?

—I'm _____ Chinese.

A. saying; speaking

B. speaking; say

C. say; speaking

三、选词填空。 【导学号 76836048】

cleans clean cleaning

1. I'm helpful. I can _____ my room.
2. Lily usually _____ her room on the weekend.
3. The students are _____ the classroom now.

四、看图片，用合适的内容补全句子。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

1. My father usually _____ kung fu on Sundays.
2. Look! The boy is _____ music.
3. My mother is _____ dinner in the kitchen.
4. —Are you _____?

—Yes, I am.

5. —*Ni hao. Ni zai zuo shen me?*

—Sorry. What are you saying?

—_____

五、阅读短文，判断下列图片与短文内容是（T）否（F）相符。

Today is Sunday. Jack and his mum are playing in the zoo. There are many animals in it. Look! The pandas are sleeping. The koalas are climbing trees. They are lovely. The monkeys are eating bananas. Look there. A few rabbits are jumping. The baby elephant is behind its mum. They are walking. They are very happy.



1. ( )



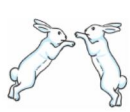
2. ( )



3. ( )



4. ( )



5. ( )



6. ( )

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

周末加油站(十二)

☞(答案见 114 页)

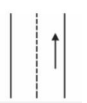
知识集中营

项目	掌握要求	内 容
单词	四 会	keep 保持某种状态　turn 顺序
	三 会	show 给人看; 指引　anything 任何事物　else 另外; 其他　exhibition 展览 say 说; 讲　sushi 寿司　teach 教　sure (表示同意) 当然 Canadian 加拿大的　Spanish 西班牙的
短语	四 会	keep to the right 靠右　keep your desk clean 保持你的课桌干净 talk quietly 小声讲话　take turns 按顺序来
	三 会	have a look 看一看
句子	重 点	Shh. Talk quietly. 嘘, 小声讲话。 Keep your desk clean. 保持桌面整洁。
素养提升	必备方法	分类记忆法　抓关键信息法
	必备能力	能够根据情景谈论行为规范。

Part 1 Listening

听力训练

一、听录音,给下列图片排序。


(　) (　) (　)




(　) (　)

二、听录音,选择你所听到的单词。

(　) 1. A. talk　B. take　C. book

(　) 2. A. crayon　B. clean　C. quiet

(　) 3. A. speak　B. say　C. sushi

(　) 4. A. Anything　B. Any　C. Thing

三、听录音,选择正确的答语。

(　) 1. A. I'm speaking Chinese.
B. I'm doing kung fu.
C. I'm listening to music.

(　) 2. A. Yes, I am playing sports.
B. No, I'm playing music.
C. Yes, I am.

(　) 3. A. They are reading books.
B. She is cooking rice.
C. I'm cleaning the room.

(　) 4. A. No, of course.
B. OK, I will.
C. Yes, I'm talking quietly.

四、听录音,补全句子。

1. _____ in the library.
2. The bus is coming. Please _____.
3. My sister is _____.
4. Can you _____ for me?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part 2 Speaking

口语测评

五、用英语说一说下面图片所表示的意思。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

Part 3 Reading and writing

六、判断下列句子与图片是 (T) 否 (F) 相符。

( ) 1. No eating! 

( ) 2. Keep your desk clean. 

( ) 3. Keep to the right. 

( ) 4. Quiet, please! 

( ) 5. Take turns. 

七、单项选择。

( ) 1. The desks are so dirty. Please _____ them!
A. open B. close C. clean

( ) 2. Here _____ some crayons. They are _____. 【导学号 76836049】
A. is; theirs B. are; theirs
C. are; their

( ) 3. Don't talk _____ the library.
A. on B. in C. to

( ) 4. _____ quiet! It's time for class.
A. Keep B. Work C. Talk

八、给下列行为选择合适的提示语。

( ) 1. We are waiting for a bus at the stop.

( ) 2. She is talking aloud in the hospital.

( ) 3. The students are going up and down the stairs (楼梯).

( ) 4. They are doing their homework in the classroom.

( ) 5. The boy is colouring at his desk.

A. Take turns. B. Keep to the right.
C. Work quietly. D. Talk quietly.
E. Keep your desk clean.

九、阅读短文，根据短文内容把句子补充完整。

【抓关键信息法】

Some students are in the nature park. Ann is drawing pictures. Lily is playing with Lucy. Please work quietly. Mike is listening to music. Zhang Peng and John are flying kites. Amy and Chen Jie are eating cakes. Oh, please keep the ground clean. Wu Yifan and Robin are speaking English. They are talking quietly. Some boys are playing with the toys. Miss White tells them to take turns. They're having a good time.

1. Ann is _____ in the nature park.
2. Wu Yifan and Robin _____.
3. _____ and _____ should keep the ground clean.
4. John is _____ with _____.
5. Boys should _____ to play with the toys.

十、根据提示写一篇短文，用现在进行时介绍一家人正在做的事情。

my mother	cook supper
my father	write to my uncle
my brother Tim	do homework
I	clean the room
my cat Mimi	eat fish

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Recycle 2

☞(答案见 115 页)

一、选择合适的疑问词,完成对话。

What Whose Why Which When

1. —_____ do you finish your class in the morning?
   —We finish our class at 11: 30.
2. —_____ season do you like best?
   —I like winter best.
3. —_____ do you like summer?
   —Because I like the summer vacation.
4. —_____ is this? —It's Sarah's.
5. —_____ is the little monkey doing?
   —It is playing with its mother.

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. _____ is on June 1st.
A. China's National Day
B. New Year's Day
C. Children's Day

( ) 2. —_____ maths book is that?
—It's _____.
A. Whose; your B. Who's; yours
C. Whose; yours

( ) 3. I like summer because I can _____.
A. go swimming B. make a snowman
C. eat mooncakes

( ) 4. Mother's Day is _____ the second Sunday _____ May.
A. on; on B. on; in C. in; in

( ) 5. It's 9: 00 p. m. He is _____. But he often goes to _____ at 10: 00 p. m.
A. sleep; sleeping B. sleeping; sleep
C. sleeping; sleeping

三、根据图片提示,补充完整问答句。



1. 2. 3. 4.

1. A: What's she doing?
   B: _____
2. A: When is China's National Day?
   B: _____
3. A: Which season is it?
   B: _____
4. A: What _____?
   B: They are _____.

四、阅读短文,完成句子或对话。

My name's Sarah. I'm from the UK. I usually get up at 6: 30. I always do my homework on the weekend. I like spring best. It's windy and warm. And I like winter, too. Because my birthday is in November. Today is Sunday. My parents are shopping. My brother Sam is watching TV. I'm reading a book.

1. Sarah is from the _____.
2. Sarah's birthday is in _____.
3. Sarah always _____ on the weekend.
4. —What are Sarah's parents doing?
   —_____
5. —Is Sam watching TV?
   —_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 复习训练

☞（答案见 115 页）

一、根据汉语提示，完成句子。

1. I often _____（吃早餐）at 7: 00.
2. My mum often _____（散步）after dinner.
3. Tim usually _____（上舞蹈课）on the weekend.
4. I often _____（进行体育运动）at the weekend.
5. Can you _____（购物）with me?

二、单项选择。

（ ）1. Let's _____ swimming together next weekend. 【导学号 76836050】
A. will go B. go C. going

（ ）2. —_____ do you do the housework?
—I do the housework at 5: 00 p. m.
A. What B. Who C. When

（ ）3. My father _____ cleans the room on Sunday. 【导学号 76836051】
A. some times B. sometimes
C. some time

（ ）4. —I often play games with my friends on Saturdays.
—It _____ a lot of fun.
A. sounds like B. sound like
C. sound likes

（ ）5. I always do morning exercises _____ 7 o'clock _____ the morning.
A. in; at B. at; on C. at; in

三、给问句选择相应的答语。

（ ）1. When do you eat lunch?
（ ）2. What do you do on Sundays?
（ ）3. Do you often play sports in the afternoon?
（ ）4. What day is it today?
（ ）5. Where is Zhang Peng?

A. I usually play the *pipa*.
B. Today is Friday.
C. He's in the classroom.
D. At 12 o'clock. E. No, I don't.

四、阅读短文，回答问题。

I'm Jack Green. I'm a doctor. I work at night. I go to work at half past six in the evening. I eat dinner at ten o'clock. I usually go home at eight o'clock in the morning of the next day. After breakfast, I go to bed at nine o'clock. I usually get up at half past two in the afternoon. I eat my lunch at three o'clock. Then I play sports at four o'clock in the park. This is my day. I enjoy my life.

1. What's Mr Green's job?

_____

2. When does Mr Green go to work?

_____

3. Where does Mr Green play sports?

_____

4. When does Mr Green get up?

_____

5. What does Mr Green usually do at 8: 00 a. m.?

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 复习训练

☞(答案见115页)

一、单项选择。

( ) 1. In _____, I can wear my shorts.
A. winter B. autumn C. summer

( ) 2. —_____ season does he like best?
—Spring.
A. Which B. Where C. How

( ) 3. The_____ are green in spring and yellow in fall. 【导学号76836052】
A. leaf B. leafs C. leaves

( ) 4. My father _____ like winter.
A. isn't B. doesn't C. don't

二、根据图片把对话补充完整。



1. 2. 3. 4.

1. —Do you often _____ _____ _____ _____ in autumn?
—Yes, we do. We all like that.

2. —_____ do you like _____?
—Because it is hot. I can _____ _____.

3. —_____ _____ do you like best?
—I like _____. Because I like _____.

4. —_____ _____ is it?
—It's _____.
—What do you often do in this season?
—We usually _____ _____ with farmers.

三、选择正确的选项补全对话。

Tom: 1. _____
Amy: Winter.
Tom: Why?
Amy: 2. _____
Tom: I don't like winter. It's too cold.
Amy: 3. _____
Tom: Yes, I like summer very much.
Amy: What do you often do in summer?
Tom: 4. _____
Amy: That's good exercise.

A. Because I can play in the snow.
B. I often go swimming.
C. Do you like summer?
D. Which season do you like best?

四、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Sanya is a beautiful city. The buildings are tall. The trees are tall, too. For many people in Hainan, summer is their favourite season. It's hot and sunny. The boys and girls can wear their sunglasses and beautiful T-shirts. They can swim, too. The popular(流行的)drink in Hainan is coconut(椰子)juice. It's fresh and sweet. It's very delicious. Spring is warm in Hainan. Autumn is cool. It seems that there is no winter in Hainan. It is often warm and cool in winter there. It's not cold.

( ) 1. Sanya is a beautiful city in Hainan.
( ) 2. Many people like summer best in Hainan.
( ) 3. It's very cold in winter in Hainan.
( ) 4. The popular drink in Hainan is orange juice.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 复习训练

☞（答案见115页）

一、选词填空。（可重复使用）

on　at　in

1. We'll go to the Great Wall _____ June.
2. I will give flowers to my teacher _____ Teachers' Day.
3. She goes to school _____ 8: 00 a. m. _____ the morning.
4. Do you often go on a picnic _____ the weekend?
5. The English party is _____ April 12th.

二、单项选择。

(　　) 1. We will _____ the Great Wall.
A. goes to　B. to go　C. go to

(　　) 2. It is a festival for teachers. It's on _____.【导学号76836053】
A. Sept. 10th　B. June 1st
C. October 9th

(　　) 3. She is good at singing. So she'll win in the _____.
A. school trip　B. sports meet
C. singing contest

(　　) 4. We have _____ apples on the desk.
A. a few　B. any　C. are

(　　) 5. There are _____ months in a year. The _____ month is June.【导学号76836054】
A. twelve; six　B. twelfth; sixth
C. twelve; sixth

三、按要求完成下面的句子。

1. Amy's birthday is in April.（对画线部分提问）

_____

2. The party is on June 2nd.（对画线部分提问）

_____

3. What will you do for your mum on Mother's Day?（用“弹琵琶”回答）

_____

4. National, when, Day, is, China's (?)（连词成句）

_____

四、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

There are some festivals in China. In winter, there is the Spring Festival in February. Children can get the lucky money in this festival. Then Tree Planting Day comes after Women's Day. When summer comes, there is the Dragon Boat Festival in June. People often row boats in the river. Children like June best, because Children's Day is in June. Mid-Autumn Day comes after Teachers' Day. We often make some cards for our teachers.

(　　) 1. Children can get the lucky money in February.

(　　) 2. Women's Day comes before Tree Planting Day.

(　　) 3. People often row boats in the river in May.

(　　) 4. Mid-Autumn Day is on August 1st.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 复习训练

☞(答案见115页)

一、观察表格,写出序数词或基数词。

one	five	eleven	twenty	twenty-five
	5th			

twelve		twenty-two
	nineteenth	

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. There _____ some special days in May.
A. is B. be C. are

( ) 2. When is the _____ contest?
A. sings B. sing C. singing

( ) 3. This Tuesday is Lisa's _____ birthday.
A. twenty B. twenty-first
C. twenty-one

( ) 4. Wednesday is the _____ day of a week.
A. third B. fourth C. fifth

( ) 5. —When is Father's Day?
—It's _____ the third Sunday _____ June. 【导学号76836055】
A. on; in B. in; at C. in; in

三、根据所给提示或句意写单词,完成句子。

1. I see _____ (tenth) kittens in the picture.
2. My birthday is on July the _____ (one).
3. My classroom is on the _____ (three) floor.
4. There are _____ (nine) sheep on his farm.
5. Mother's Day is on the _____ Sunday in May.

四、看图,把句子补充完整。


1.


2.



3.



4.



5.



6.

1. Tree Planting Day is on _____.
2. Christmas is on _____.
3. The school trip is on _____ this year.
4. My grandpa's birthday is on _____.
5. May Day is on _____.
6. Mother's Day is on the _____ Sunday in _____.

五、阅读短文,判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

I'm busy in September. Teachers' Day is on September 10th. I'll make a card for Miss Tang. The maths test is on September 14th. I'll play the piano for my mum on September 20th. That's my mum's birthday. The school trip is in September, too. We'll go to the Great Wall on September 24th. What a busy month!

( ) 1. Miss Tang is a teacher.
( ) 2. I have a maths test in October.
( ) 3. My mum's birthday is on September 20th.
( ) 4. I'll sing a song to my mum on her birthday.
( ) 5. We'll go to the Great Wall in autumn.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 复习训练

☞（答案见115页）

一、看图片，填入所缺的单词。


1.


2.


3.


4.

1. They are _____ in the snow.
2. The girl is _____ an apple now.
3. My brother is _____ a book in the library.
4. —Is the elephant _____ water?
   —Yes, it is.

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. The yellow picture is _____.
A. my B. me C. mine

( ) 2. The picture _____ Shanghai is nice.
A. to B. of C. on

( ) 3. —_____ books are these?
—They are hers.
A. Whose B. Who's C. Who

( ) 4. They're _____ pencils. The pencils are _____.
【导学号 76836056】
A. theirs; their B. their; theirs
C. there; there's

三、看图，补全对话。



1.


2.


3.


4.

1. —Where are the students?
   —_____
2. —Are they climbing the trees?
   —_____
3. —What are they doing?
   —_____
4. —Whose bike is this?
   —_____

四、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Today is a fine day. My mom takes me to the zoo. There are many animals in the zoo. Look! Two tigers are walking, two rabbits are running and a lion is sleeping. I like monkeys best. They are swinging now. They like eating yellow bananas. Sometimes they climb trees. They are very good climbers. Sometimes they jump up and down.

( ) 1. I go to the zoo with _____ today.
A. my father B. my mother
C. my grandma

( ) 2. What are the rabbits doing now?
A. They are walking.
B. They are running.
C. They are jumping up and down.

( ) 3. What is my favourite animal?
A. Monkeys. B. Lions. C. Tigers.

( ) 4. What are the monkeys doing now?
A. They are jumping up and down.
B. They are eating yellow bananas.
C. They are swinging.

( ) 5. _____ are good climbers.
A. The rabbits B. The tigers
C. The monkeys

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 复习训练

☞(答案见115页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子。

1. Please talk _____(轻声地). Your sister is sleeping.
2. They usually _____ _____ _____(做早操) in the morning.
3. —Can we use your crayons?
   —OK. _____ _____(按顺序来).
4. Lucy must _____(保持) her bedroom _____(干净的).

二、单项选择。

( ) 1. Zhao Na can _____ English well.
A. say B. speak C. tell

( ) 2. —Where is Mike?
—Oh, he _____ in the study.
A. reading B. read C. is reading

( ) 3. —Can I use your bike?
—_____ 【导学号76836057】
A. Yes, of course.
B. No, thanks.
C. Yes, you're right.

( ) 4. —We are waiting for the bus.
—_____
A. Talk quietly. B. Take turns.
C. Keep to the right.

( ) 5. Which sign can you see on the road?
A.  B.  C. 

三、给下列问句选答语。

( ) 1. What is John doing?
( ) 2. Is Tom doing morning exercises?
( ) 3. Are you cleaning the classroom?
( ) 4. Is Lily washing the clothes?
( ) 5. Where are the boys?

A. No, she isn't.
B. They are in the classroom.
C. He is playing music.
D. Yes, he is.
E. No, we aren't.

四、根据图示,补全句子。



1. 2. 3. 4.

1. The students are _____.
2. They are _____ at home.
3. —Is she _____?
   —Yes, she is.
4. —Can we walk on the bridge?
   —Yes, _____.

五、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

What a big zoo! I can see many animals. Look! Here are two kangaroos. They're jumping. The monkeys are hungry. They're eating bananas. The pandas are eating bamboo. The bears are climbing trees. There are some giraffes over there. They're drinking water. I love all the animals. They're our good friends.

( ) 1. The kangaroos are jumping.
( ) 2. The monkeys are eating bamboo.
( ) 3. The pandas are climbing trees.
( ) 4. The giraffes are drinking water.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，根据所听内容为下列图片排序。（5 分）


（　）


（　）


（　）


（　）


（　）

二 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（　）1. A. where　　B. what　　C. when
（　）2. A. breakfast　　B. lunch　　C. dinner
（　）3. A. exercise　　B. expensive　　C. study
（　）4. A. at school　　B. from school　　C. after school
（　）5. A. at 3：40 a. m.　　B. at 3：40 p. m.　　C. 4：30 p. m

三 听录音，在相应的表格内打“√”。（10 分）

					
6：30					
7：00					
10：30					
4：00					
9：30					

四 听录音，选出恰当的应答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. It's 7 o'clock.　　B. At 7 o'clock.　　C. I like morning exercises.
（　）2. A. Yes, I do.　　B. Yes, I do my homework.　　C. Yes, I am.
（　）3. A. I play basketball.　　B. I have PE.　　C. I have breakfast.
（　）4. A. Thank you.　　B. You're welcome.　　C. That sounds good.
（　）5. A. I often read books.　　B. I like sports.　　C. I have breakfast.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，选出画线部分发音不同的一项。（5 分）

（　）1. A. clothes　　B. please　　C. class
（　）2. A. always　　B. cave　　C. late
（　）3. A. plate　　B. eggplant　　C. blue
（　）4. A. cake　　B. make　　C. cat
（　）5. A. sing　　B. bike　　C. Friday

六 选择合适的介词填空。（10 分）

after　in　on　at　with

1. Fan Yiwei is good _____ sports.
2. When do you go to bed _____ Spain?
3. I often read books _____ dinner.
4. I live _____ an island. It is very nice.
5. In the morning, I play sports _____ my friend. His name is Friday.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. —_____ do you have a football class?
—On Tuesdays.
A. What　　B. Where　　C. When
（　）2. I often play _____ with my friends after school.
A. the basketball　　B. pipa　　C. sports
（　）3. —Do you often do morning exercises?
—_____ That's good exercise.
A. Yes, I can.　　B. Yes, I do.　　C. No, I don't.

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 4. We eat lunch _____ 11:50 _____ home.
A. at; at B. at; in C. on; at

( ) 5. —_____
—It's 6 o'clock.
A. When do you eat breakfast? B. What time is it?
C. Is there a clock on the table?

八 根据图片提示，补全句子。(15分)

1.  2.  3.  4.  5. 

1. I often _____ _____ _____ on the weekend.
2. Let's _____ _____ _____ _____.
3. The boy _____ _____ at 7:20 a. m.
4. —Do you _____ _____ on Sundays?
—Yes, sometimes.
5. —What do they do on Sunday afternoon?
—They _____ _____ _____ _____ in the gym.

九 选择恰当的句子补全下面的对话。(10分)

A: Hi, Jim. 1. _____
B: I get up at 6:30. 2. _____
A: Usually at 6:00. 3. _____
B: I often wash my clothes and clean the windows.
A: Wow! 4. _____
B: Do you do housework, too?
A: Yes, sometimes. 5. _____
B: Sounds interesting!

A. You're so hard-working.
B. When do you get up on Saturdays?
C. What do you do on the weekend?
D. But I often play computer games.
E. What about you?

十 阅读短文，根据短文内容选择正确的答案。(10分)

Hello, I am Zoom. I get up at 6:00 every day in the morning. I eat breakfast at 6:30. Then I go to school at 7:00. We do morning exercises at 8:00. We have three classes in the morning and three in the afternoon. I go home at 5:00 p. m. I play basketball at 5:30. I eat supper at 7:30. Then I do my homework. I go to bed at 9:00. This is my day. What about yours?

( ) 1. Where does Zoom eat breakfast?
A. At school. B. At home.
C. At the dining room.

( ) 2. How many classes does Zoom have a day?
A. Five. B. Six.
C. Seven.

( ) 3. When does Zoom play sports in the afternoon?
A. At 5:30 p. m. B. At 5:00 p. m.
C. At 6:30 p. m.

( ) 4. When does Zoom do his homework?
A. In the morning. B. In the evening.
C. He does his homework at 7:30 a. m.

( ) 5. What does Zoom do at 9:00 p. m. ?
A. He has classes. B. He plays sports.
C. He goes to bed.

十一 书面表达。(10分)

根据下面的提示信息完成杨丽的自我介绍，可适当发挥。

提示：星期一至星期五去上学；通常6:30起床；7:00去上学；7:50在学校吃早餐，然后做早操；下午五点放学回家，然后帮妈妈打扫房间；7:30做作业；9:00去睡觉。

Hello, everyone. I'm Yang Li. _____

荣德基 品质教辅

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，根据你所听到的内容为下列图片排序。（5 分）







（　）（　）（　）（　）（　）

二 听录音，选择正确的答语。（5 分）

（　）1. A. I like green best.　B. I like winter best.　C. I like music best.

（　）2. A. Because I can swim.　B. Because I can pick apples.　C. Because I can make a snowman.

（　）3. A. On foot.　B. At 7 : 00 a. m.　C. At 7 : 00 p. m.

（　）4. A. I often watch TV.　B. Yes, I do.　C. On the weekend.

（　）5. A. It's sunny.　B. It's my favourite.　C. I can fly a kite.

三 听录音，根据你所听到的内容连线。（10 分）

1. Bob　2. Tom　3. Sarah　4. Mary　5. Lily

A. 　B. 　C. 　D. 　E. 

四 听录音，完成短文。（10 分）

There are four 1. _____ in a year. And I like 2. _____ 3. _____. The trees are green. There are pretty flowers everywhere. The weather is windy and 4. _____. Children can fly kites in the park. I often go on a 5. _____ with my friends. That's fun!

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，选出与所给单词画线部分发音相同的一项。（10 分）

（　）1. grass　A. grow　B. glue　C. glass

（　）2. brother　A. blue　B. library　C. black

（　）3. season　A. leaf　B. bread　C. weather

（　）4. apple　A. vacation　B. cave　C. have

（　）5. best　A. very　B. because　C. make

六 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. —Which _____ do you like best?
—Summer.
A. season　B. fruit　C. sport

（　）2. — _____ do you like spring?
—Because I can fly a kite.
A. What　B. How　C. Why

（　）3. —Let's go _____. It's too hot.
—Good idea.
A. swim　B. swimming　C. swims

（　）4. Farmers are very busy in _____.
A. autumn　B. winter　C. season

（　）5. We often play _____ the snow.
A. /　B. in　C. of

（　）6. There are beautiful flowers _____.
A. everywhere　B. where　C. everything

（　）7. The weather _____ good and the flowers _____ beautiful.
A. is; is　B. is; are　C. are; are

（　）8. —What's your favourite season?
—Spring. There _____ beautiful flowers everywhere.
A. is　B. have　C. are

（　）9. I want to go swimming, _____ I can't swim.
A. but　B. and　C. so

（　）10. I like summer best because _____ Children's Day.
A. with　B. at　C. of

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七 读一读，根据所给图片提示补全句子。（10分）

1.  2.  3.  4.  5. 

1. I like _____ best, because I can _____ _____ a _____ with my friends.
2. —Which _____ do you like best?
   —I like all _____.
3. I can _____ apples in _____.
4. I like to _____ _____ in _____.
5. I can make a _____ in _____.

八 按要求完成下面的句子。（10分）

1. in, lots, there, of, is, snow, winter (.)（连词成句）

_____

2. like, I, vacation, because, summer (.)（连词成句）

_____

3. I like spring best.（对画线部分提问）

_____

4. Which season do you like best?（根据实际情况回答问题）

_____

5. Do you like summer?（作肯定回答）

_____

九 选择正确的选项补全对话。（10分）

Amy: I have a new friend. Her name is Lily.
Tom: 1. _____
Amy: She likes spring best.
Tom: 2. _____
Amy: Because there are lots of beautiful flowers.
Tom: 3. _____
Amy: It's warm.
Tom: 4. _____
Amy: She often plants flowers.
Tom: 5. _____
Amy: She is in the classroom.

A. Why?
B. What's her favourite season?
C. Where is she now?
D. What's the weather like in spring?
E. What does she often do in spring?

十 根据短文内容，选择正确的答案。（10分）

There are four seasons in a year. I can do many things. In spring, it's warm and windy. I can fly kites. The flowers are beautiful. The grass is very green. In summer, it's sunny and hot. I like summer best! Because I can eat ice cream and swim in the pool with my friends. I can go on a picnic with my parents. Autumn is a golden season. There is a lot of snow in winter. I can play in the snow. Which season do you like best?

(　　) 1. It's _____ in spring.
A. hot　　B. cold　　C. warm

(　　) 2. The grass is very _____ in spring.
A. green　　B. golden　　C. gray

(　　) 3. I like _____ best.
A. autumn　　B. summer　　C. winter

(　　) 4. I can go on a picnic with my _____ in summer.
A. friends　　B. classmates　　C. parents

(　　) 5. I can play in the snow in _____.
A. winter　　B. spring　　C. autumn

十一 书面表达。（10分）

以“My favourite season”为题，用英语描述一下自己最喜欢的季节。
要求：语句通顺，不少于5句话。

My favourite season

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

荣德基 品质教辅

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3过关检测卷

时间：40分钟　满分：100分

	听力（30分）				笔试（70分）								总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得　分													

第一部分　听力（30分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的选项。（5分）

（　）1. A. games　　B. same　　C. names
（　）2. A. apple　　B. April　　C. August
（　）3. A. John　　B. June　　C. July
（　）4. A. make a birthday card　　B. make a wish
　　C. make a birthday cake
（　）5. A. My birthday is in May.　　B. My mother's birthday is in May.
　　C. My brother's birthday is in May.

二 听录音，按照听到的顺序给下列图片排序。（5分）








（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

三 根据所听问题，选择正确的答语。（10分）

（　）1. A. Yes, he is.　　B. Yes, she is.　　C. Yes, it is.
（　）2. A. I will cook for my father.
　　B. I will sing birthday songs.
　　C. I will plant trees.
（　）3. A. It's in February.　　B. It's in March.　　C. It's in September.
（　）4. A. Yes, I do.　　B. Yes, I will.　　C. No, I don't.
（　）5. A. I'm ten years old.　　B. My birthday is in June.　　C. My birthday is coming.

四 根据所听内容判断句子是（T）否（F）正确。（10分）

（　）1. Lucy likes April.
（　）2. Sarah likes June very much.
（　）3. Amy can play games and get gifts on her birthday.
（　）4. They usually have a school trip in October.
（　）5. Miss White likes July and August.

第二部分　笔试（70分）

五 读一读，找出每组单词画线部分发音不同的选项。（5分）

（　）1. A. China　　B. chair　　C. Christmas
（　）2. A. national　　B. name　　C. thanksgiving
（　）3. A. July　　B. February　　C. library
（　）4. A. October　　B. November　　C. shopping
（　）5. A. trip　　B. thing　　C. April

六 根据首字母填空完成句子。（5分）

1. In China, winter is from D_____ to F_____.
2. J_____ is the first month of a year.
3. The summer vacation is in J_____ and A_____.
4. C_____'s Day and F_____'s Day are in June.
5. My birthday is in O_____.

七 单项选择。（10分）

（　）1. Mid-Autumn Day is usually in September _____ October.
　　A. and　　B. or　　C. but
（　）2. My birthday is in June. _____ birthday is in June, too.
　　A. Aunt　　B. Aunt Mary　　C. Aunt Mary's
（　）3. July is my favourite _____.
　　A. season　　B. day　　C. month
（　）4. When is Zhang Yang's _____ birthday?
　　A. grandpas'　　B. grandpas　　C. grandpa's
（　）5. _____ will you do for your mother on Mother's Day?
　　A. What　　B. When　　C. How
（　）6. There are _____ books in my bedroom. And I often read them.
　　A. few　　B. a few　　C. a lot
（　）7. —When is China's National Day?
　　—It's _____.
　　A. in September　　B. on March 1st　　C. in October
（　）8. —I hope you can come and eat mooncakes with us.
　　—That's very kind _____ you!
　　A. of　　B. at　　C. for
（　）9. _____ you come to the party?
　　A. Will　　B. Are　　C. Does

关注微信公众号“数辑资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 10. I'll _____ for my father on Father's Day.
A. making a card B. say "happy birthday to you"
C. make a card

八 为图片选择正确的句子。(10分)

( ) 1. A. My friend Ann likes winter vacation.
B. I like summer vacation.



( ) 2. A. We will have a sports meet in May.
B. We will have a school trip in May.



( ) 3. A. The little girl's birthday is in June.
B. My birthday is in August.



( ) 4. A. Christmas is in December.
B. American Thanksgiving Day is in November.



( ) 5. A. I will go to the Great Wall with my parents.
B. We will have an English party at 7 o'clock.



九 按要求完成下列各题。(10分)

1. Tree Planting Day is on March 12th. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ Tree Planting Day?

2. We'll go to Beijing on China's National Day. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ you do on China's National Day?

3. I will write him a letter on his birthday. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ you _____ _____ a letter on _____ birthday?

4. Do you usually have a picnic in October? (作肯定回答)

_____, we _____.

5. singing, is, in, usually, the, contest, May (.) (连词成句)

_____

十 选择正确的选项补全对话。(10分)

Zhao Fei: Hello, Li Liang. You look so happy today. Why?
Li Liang: 1. _____
Zhao Fei: Happy birthday to her!
Li Liang: 2. _____
Zhao Fei: 3. _____
Li Liang: We will have a birthday party for her. 4. _____
Zhao Fei: Sure. When is it?
Li Liang: 5. _____
Zhao Fei: OK. See you then.
Li Liang: Bye.

A. Will you come?	B. Thank you!
C. At 6:00 p.m.	D. Because today is my mother's birthday.
E. What will you do for your mother on her birthday?	

十一 阅读短文,根据短文内容选择正确的答案。(10分)

Mid-Autumn Day is on August 15th in the lunar calendar (阴历). On that day, families get together to celebrate it. At night, we sit in the open air (露天), enjoy the bright round moon and eat mooncakes and fruit. We all have a good time on that day. It's said (据说) that there is a beautiful woman living on the moon with her rabbit. Her name is Chang'e.

( ) 1. Mid-Autumn Day is on _____ in the lunar calendar.
A. January 15th B. August 15th C. May 15th

( ) 2. What do we do on that day?
A. Enjoy the moon. B. Eat mooncakes and fruit. C. Both A and B.

( ) 3. It's said that Chang'e lives on the moon with her _____.
A. dog B. rabbit C. cat

( ) 4. People are _____ on that day.
A. happy B. sad C. angry

十二 书面表达。(10分)

根据图片中的情景以"My favourite month is _____"为题,写一写你最喜欢的月份,为什么喜欢这个月份?

要求:语句通顺,不少于5句话。





_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"数辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期中检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，给下列图片排序。（5 分）







（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

二 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（　）1. A. 　B. 

（　）2. A. 　B. 

（　）3. A. 　B. 

（　）4. A. 

　B. 

（　）5. A. 　B. 

三 听录音，根据所听内容给听到的问题选择正确的答案。（10 分）

（　）1. A. She goes shopping and plays the piano.
　　B. She usually plays the piano.
　　C. Sometimes she climbs mountains and goes swimming.

（　）2. A. At 6：00 p. m.　B. At 5：30 p. m.　C. At 7：30 p. m.

（　）3. A. Because he can swim in the river.
　　B. Because he can swim and eat.
　　C. Because he can swim and eat some fruit.

（　）4. A. Summer.　B. Spring.　C. Winter.

（　）5. A. In June.　B. In July.　C. In April.

四 听录音，补全句子，填单词或短语。（10 分）

Sam：Which __1__ do you like best?
Linda：__2__.
Sam：Why?
Linda：Because I can __3__. What about you?
Sam：I like __4__. My birthday is in __5__.
Linda：My birthday is in July. Please come to my birthday party then.
Sam：OK, I will.

1. _____　2. _____　3. _____
4. _____　5. _____

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 判断下列每组单词中画线部分读音是（T）否（F）相同。（5 分）

（　）1.	play	eggplant	plane
（　）2.	clock	class	clean
（　）3.	library	umbrella	brown
（　）4.	Chinese	children	school
（　）5.	sheep	fish	shoes

六 读句子，根据句意填入单词，使句意完整。（10 分）

1. —_____ do you like winter?
　—Because I can make a snowman.
2. —_____ do you go to bed?
　—I often go to bed at 9 o'clock.
3. —_____ do you often do on the weekend?
　—I often read books.
4. —_____ season do you like best?
　—I like summer best.
5. —_____ will you have an English party?
　—In March.

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七 单项选择。(10分)

( ) 1. We will have _____ English party tomorrow.
A. the B. a C. an

( ) 2. My birthday is _____ December.
A. in B. on C. at

( ) 3. I usually get up _____ 6:30.
A. in B. at C. on

( ) 4. I usually _____ shopping with my mother on Sundays.
A. have B. buy C. go

( ) 5. In China, summer is from June to _____.
A. December B. August C. July

( ) 6. _____ is in December.
A. Christmas B. China's National Day C. New Year's Day

( ) 7. Now it is summer. The next season is _____.
A. spring B. autumn C. winter

( ) 8. Spring is good, _____ winter is my favourite season.
A. and B. but C. so

( ) 9. I can go swimming, _____.
A. too B. to C. also

( ) 10. —We can pick apples in autumn.
—That _____ like a lot of fun.
A. looks B. sound C. sounds

八 根据图片提示，补全句子。(15分)

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

1. —Do you _____ _____ on Sundays?
—Yes, sometimes.
2. —What do they often do on Sunday afternoon?
—They often _____ _____ _____ in the gym.
3. —Why do you like winter best?
—Because I can _____ _____ with my friends.
4. —When do you _____ _____ after school?
—At _____ _____.
5. —When do you _____ _____ _____ _____?
—In _____.

九 阅读短文，根据首字母提示补全短文。(10分)

I'm Sandy. I like s_____ best. It's w_____ and windy. We can see p_____ flowers and green t_____ everywhere. Children fly kites. Birds s_____ songs in the sky. I usually have a p_____ with my family. We often have a school t_____ in spring. We have an E_____ party in spring, too. We have a lot of f_____ and drinks. We are very h_____.

十 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

Lily is a doctor. She is very pretty and active. Every day she goes to work at 7:50 in the morning. Then she goes home at 5:00 in the afternoon. On Monday and Tuesday evenings, she reads books. On Wednesday evening, she has an English class. She often goes shopping with her mother on Saturdays. Sometimes she cleans her room. On Sundays, she usually does morning exercises. Because the weather report says it's going to rain! So, she will listen to music at home this Sunday.

( ) 1. Lily is a beautiful doctor.
( ) 2. Lily goes to work in the morning and goes back home in the afternoon.
( ) 3. Lily and her mother often go shopping on Wednesday.
( ) 4. Lily will listen to music at home this Sunday, because the weather will be bad.
( ) 5. Lily is also an English teacher, because she has an English class on Wednesday.

十一 看图写作。(10分)

认真观察春天的图片，看看天气怎么样？可以做什么？然后以“I like spring”为题写下来，可适当发挥，不少于五句话。



I like spring

荣德基 品质教辅

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选择你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（　）1. A. first　　B. second　　C. third

（　）2. A. January　　B. February　　C. spring

（　）3. A. the art show　　B. Children's Day　　C. Christmas Day

（　）4. A. twelfth　　B. fifth　　C. fourth

（　）5. A. Chinese test　　B. English test　　C. sports meet

二 听录音，根据听到的内容给图片标序号。（5 分）



（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

三 听问句，选答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. Yes, I am.　　B. No, there isn't.
C. Yes, it is.

（　）2. A. Yes, she is.　　B. Her birthday is on June 3rd.
C. I cook noodles for her.

（　）3. A. I'm making a birthday card.　　B. I will make a card.
C. I love her.

（　）4. A. Yes, it is.　　B. No, I am not.
C. It's in May.

（　）5. A. Your birthday is on Dec. 30th.
B. I have a birthday cake.
C. It's June 1st.

四 听录音，判断句子正误，正确的写（T），错误的写（F）。（10 分）

（　）1. Lucy is a funny girl.

（　）2. Today is China's National Day.

（　）3. Lucy's birthday is on October 1st.

（　）4. Lucy has a brother.

（　）5. Betty's birthday is in November.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 给句子选择合适的图片。（10 分）

（　）1. We usually eat mooncakes on Mid-Autumn Day.

（　）2. My birthday is on April 8th.

（　）3. Jack's birthday is on November 21st.

（　）4. Father's Day is on the third Sunday in June.

（　）5. It often rains here in summer.



六 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. _____ is the sports meet?
—It's in June.
A. What　　B. When　　C. Where

（　）2. There are _____ months in a year.
A. twelve　　B. twelveth　　C. twelfth

（　）3. Tuesday is the _____ day of a week.
A. third　　B. fourth　　C. fifth

（　）4. Father's Day is on the _____ Sunday in June.
A. first　　B. second　　C. third

（　）5. The reading festival is _____ May 5th this year.
A. in　　B. at　　C. on

（　）6. What will you do _____ your mum?
A. for　　B. to　　C. at

（　）7. September is the _____ month of a year.
A. nineth　　B. ninth　　C. nine

关注微信公众号“数辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 8. I'll _____ a card for my dad on Father's Day.
A. making B. makes C. make

( ) 9. Today is my sister's _____ birthday.
A. eleven B. eleventh C. eleven's

( ) 10. There are so many new words in the _____ lesson.
A. twenty-one B. twentieth-first C. twenty-first

七 将下面的问句和答语连线。(10分)

1. When is Father's Day?
2. Which floor do you live?
3. When is the school trip?
4. When is Ann's birthday?
5. How many months are there in a year?

A. Her birthday is on January 1st.
B. It's on October 20th.
C. There are twelve.
D. I live on the third floor.
E. It's in June.

八 根据提示，写出合适的问句。(10分)

1. —_____
—He is eleven years old.



2. —_____
—It's on October 1st.



3. —_____
—No, it is on December 14th.



4. —_____
—I like winter best.

5. —_____
—My birthday is on March 21st.

九 选择正确的选项补全对话。(10分)

A: I like October this year.
B: 1. _____
A: Because there are some special days in this month.
B: 2. _____
A: China's National Day, Mid-Autumn Day and my birthday.
B: 3. _____
A: It's on October 6th this year.
B: 4. _____
A: My birthday is on October 28th. Please come then.
B: 5. _____

A. What are they?
B. OK.
C. Why?
D. When is Mid-Autumn Day this year?
E. When is your birthday?

十 阅读短文，根据短文内容判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

Hi, I am Jim. There are six members (成员) in my family. They are my grandma, my father, my mother, my brother, me and our kitten. There are three birthdays in March, two birthdays in September and a birthday in December. My grandma's birthday and my father's birthday are in March. My brother's birthday is on December 12th. My mother is a teacher. Her birthday is on September 29th. My mother and I both like Teachers' Day very much. On that day my mum usually buys me a big birthday cake. And I often cook dinner for her. I love my mother very much. Now can you guess when the kitten's birthday is?

( ) 1. There are four people in Jim's family.
( ) 2. There are three birthdays in September.
( ) 3. Jim's mum is a teacher, and her birthday is on March 29th.
( ) 4. Jim's birthday is on September 10th.
( ) 5. The kitten's birthday is in March.

十一 书面表达。(10分)

根据所给内容提示，以"My busy September"为题写一篇小作文。

提示词汇：Teachers' Day make a card the English test play the *pipa* mum's birthday the school trip

My busy September

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

荣德基 品质教辅

密 封 线

Unit 5过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选择你所听到的单词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. mine　　B. nine　　C. my
（　）2. A. his　　B. her　　C. hers
（　）3. A. they　　B. their　　C. theirs
（　）4. A. take　　B. drink　　C. like
（　）5. A. each　　B. eat　　C. cute

二 听录音，给下列图片排序。（5 分）


（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

三 为你所听到的句子选择合适的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. Yes, she is.　　B. She is in the study.　　C. She is eating.
（　）2. A. It is his.　　B. It is her.　　C. Yes, it is his.
（　）3. A. Of course.　　B. No, he is.　　C. Yes, he is.
（　）4. A. He is cute.　　B. It is playing.　　C. No, they are playing.
（　）5. A. He is 13 years old.　　B. He is jumping.　　C. He is kind.

四 听录音，填单词或短语补全对话。（10 分）

A: Whose dog is it? Is it 1. _____?
B: Yes, it's 2. _____.
A: Look! It is 3. _____.
B: It is very funny. It is 4. _____ with a dog now.
A: Whose dog is that?
B: It's Chen Jie's dog. It's 5. _____.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 判断下面每组单词是（T）否（F）属于同一类。（5 分）

（　）1. A. ours　　B. her　　C. mine
（　）2. A. theirs　　B. our　　C. your
（　）3. A. take　　B. come　　C. play
（　）4. A. drinking　　B. sing　　C. eating
（　）5. A. which　　B. whose　　C. what

六 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. The yellow picture is _____.
A. mine　　B. my　　C. I

（　）2. Whose storybooks _____?
A. these are　　B. are they　　C. they are

（　）3. That picture _____ Beijing is beautiful.
A. on　　B. at　　C. of

（　）4. Peter and Sarah _____ listening to music under the tree.
A. is　　B. are　　C. am

（　）5. Look! Zip _____ now!
A. is sleeping　　B. sleeping　　C. sleeps

（　）6. —_____ are they?
—They are in the park.
A. Where　　B. What　　C. When

（　）7. —_____ dress is this?
—It's _____.
A. What; Sarah's　　B. Whose; Sarah　　C. Whose; Sarah's

（　）8. —Are they reading books in the study?
—_____
A. Yes, they are.　　B. Yes, they aren't.　　C. No, they are.

（　）9. It's _____ book. The book is _____.
A. your; your　　B. your; yours　　C. yours; yours

（　）10. —What do you usually do on the weekend?
—I usually _____.
A. watching TV　　B. watch TV　　C. watches TV

荣德基 荣誉出品

七 根据图片填空，把句子补充完整。（每空一词）（10分）



1. The monkeys are _____ _____ _____.



2. The rabbits are _____ now.



3. The elephant is _____ water by the river.



4. Wu Yifan is _____ _____ with his family.



5. The boy is _____ on the bed in his room.

八 给下列句子选择正确的答语。（5分）

(　　) 1. Is your grandpa drinking water?

(　　) 2. Can you take her to the park?

(　　) 3. Whose monkey is this?

(　　) 4. Are these all ours?

(　　) 5. Where is Fido now?

A. Yes, they are.
B. No, he isn't. He's eating cakes.
C. He's in the kitchen.
D. It's Mary's.
E. Of course.

九 按要求完成下列句子。（10分）

1. The children _____ _____ _____ in the park.（用“正在看书”补全句子）

2. He's dancing in the classroom.（改为一般疑问句）

_____

3. Are these birds flying?（作出否定回答）

_____

4. park, you, to, can, the, take, him (?)（连词成句）

_____

5. picture, green, is, his, the (?)（连词成句）

_____

十 从方框中选择合适的选项补全对话。（10分）

A: Can you see the elephants?
B: 1. _____ Where are they?
A: Look! 2. _____
B: 3. _____
A: They are drinking water.
B: Oh, here come two tigers.
A: 4. _____
B: Yes, they are walking.
A: 5. _____
B: No, I don't. They are terrible（可怕的）.

A. They're near the river.
B. What are they doing?
C. Are they walking?
D. Do you like tigers?
E. No, I can't.

十一 阅读短文，判断下列句子的正（T）误（F）。（10分）

Look at the picture. It's Mike's. There are some animals in the picture. What are they doing? The rabbits are going for a walk with their mother. The birds are flying. There is a fish in the river. It's swimming. The monkey is playing with a panda. They're jumping. Look at the duck. It's dancing. It's so cute. What a nice picture!

(　　) 1. The picture is Mike's.
(　　) 2. The rabbits are going for a walk with Mike's mother.
(　　) 3. The birds are singing.
(　　) 4. The duck is dancing.
(　　) 5. The panda is jumping with the monkey.

十二 书面表达。（10分）

看图写作文。用现在进行时描述图片中的场景。



_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

荣德基 品质教辅

密 封 线

Unit 6过关检测卷

时间：40分钟　满分：100分

	听力（30分）				笔试（70分）						总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	
得　分											

第一部分　听力（30分）

听力测试

一 听录音，判断图片与所听内容是（T）否（F）一致。（5分）

1. （　）
2. （　）
3. （　）
4. （　）
5. （　）

二 听录音，选出你所听到的词汇或句子。（5分）

（　）1. A. having　　B. eat　　C. eating

（　）2. A. eating lunch　　B. watching TV　　C. doing morning exercises

（　）3. A. Talk quietly!　　B. Keep to the right.　　C. Keep your desk clean!

（　）4. A. My father is playing football with his friends.
B. My father is playing with his dog.
C. My father often plays football with his friends.

（　）5. A. What are you doing at the park?
B. What are they doing at the park?
C. When are they going to the park?

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10分）

（　）1. A. They're eating lunch.　　B. He's eating dinner.
C. They are my teachers.

（　）2. A. He's listening to music.　　B. She is having an English class.
C. She is at school.

（　）3. A. Keep your desk clean.　　B. OK. Take turns.
C. No, you can't.

（　）4. A. Keep the desk clean.　　B. Take turns.
C. Talk quietly.

（　）5. A. Yes, I am.　　B. Sure.
C. No, I don't do it.

四 听录音，判断句子正（T）误（F）。（10分）

（　）1. I'm a rabbit.

（　）2. My father is collecting stamps.

（　）3. My sister is swimming.

（　）4. I'm playing with a ball with my brother.

（　）5. We have a nice trip.

第二部分　笔试（70分）

五 选出与句子相对应的图片。（8分）

（　）1. She is washing her face now.
A. 　B. 　C. 

（　）2. They are playing sports in the gym.
A. 　B. 　C. 

（　）3. She is cooking in the kitchen now.
A. 　B. 　C. 

（　）4. He is doing Chinese kung fu.
A. 　B. 　C. 

六 单项选择。（10分）

（　）1. What _____ the little monkey doing?
A. do　　B. are　　C. is

（　）2. —Can we use your crayons?
—_____
A. Keep to the right.　　B. OK. Take turns.　　C. Talk quietly.

（　）3. —He is talking in the library.
—_____
A. Talk quietly.　　B. Keep your desk clean.　　C. Work quietly.

（　）4. —Are you doing kung fu?
—_____
A. Yes, I am.　　B. I'm cooking rice.　　C. Yes, I can.

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 5. —Tom, keep your desk clean.
—OK. I _____.
A. do B. will C. can

( ) 6. Let me _____ you the English books.
A. show B. showing C. shows

( ) 7. It's 9 o'clock. The students _____ an English class.
A. have B. having C. are having

( ) 8. —What _____ you _____?
—I'm cleaning my room.
A. are; do B. do; doing C. are; doing

( ) 9. Do you see _____ pandas?
A. a B. an C. any

( ) 10. It's playing with _____ mother.
A. its B. it C. it's

七 根据图片提示，把问句或答句补充完整。(10 分)



1. —What are they doing in the park?
—They _____.



2. —Is Sally listening to music now?
—_____



3. —_____
—Yes, they are.



4. —Are you eating dinner with your family?
—_____



5. —What is Li Ming's uncle doing?
—_____

八 选择正确的选项完成对话。(10 分)

Lucy: Look at the monkeys.
Mike: What are they __1__?
Lucy: Haha. They're eating __2__.
Mike: Oh, yes! They are so cute.
Lucy: What's the little panda doing?
Mike: It's playing __3__ its mother.
Lucy: __4__ you see any elephants?
Mike: Yes! Look there. The elephants __5__ drinking water.

( ) 1. A. do B. doing C. eat
( ) 2. A. peaches B. bamboos C. fish
( ) 3. A. of B. with C. to
( ) 4. A. Are B. Would C. Do
( ) 5. A. is B. am C. are

九 阅读理解。(20 分)

It's fine today. The sun is shining in the sky. Mr Green and his family are in the park. Mr and Mrs Green are standing under the trees. They are looking at their children. Ann is flying a kite. The boy in a white shirt and blue trousers is her brother. He's reading a book. Ann's younger brother is too young. He can't walk or run. He's drinking milk. Ann's sister isn't in the park. She is at school.

(一) 根据短文内容判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(10 分)

( ) 1. There are five people in Ann's family.
( ) 2. Ann is drinking milk.
( ) 3. Ann's sister is a student.
( ) 4. Ann's younger brother is reading a book.
( ) 5. Ann has two brothers.

(二) 根据短文内容填空。(10 分)

Mr Green and his family are 1. _____. Ann is 2. _____. Her brother is 3. _____ and her younger brother is 4. _____. Ann's sister is 5. _____.

十 看图片，写一写 Mike 一家都在做什么。(12 分)

A happy day

I am Mike. Today is Sunday. It's a nice day. _____



荣德基 品质教辅

期末检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	分
得　分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你听到的单词或词组。（5 分）

（　）1. A. spring　　B. summer　　C. autumn
（　）2. A. March　　B. May　　C. April
（　）3. A. eat breakfast　　B. eat lunch　　C. eat dinner
（　）4. A. eating　　B. drinking　　C. sleeping
（　）5. A. twelve　　B. twelfth　　C. twentieth

二 听句子，判断图片与所听句子是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. 　（　）
2. 　（　）
3. 

（　）
4. 　（　）
5. 　（　）

三 听问句，选择合适的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. There are four seasons in a year.　　B. I like spring best.
C. I can go swimming.
（　）2. A. At 6：20.　　B. At school.
C. I have noodles for breakfast.
（　）3. A. We usually go hiking.
B. They're playing the piano.
C. She's planting trees.
（　）4. A. Monday.　　B. February.　　C. June 8th.
（　）5. A. I go shopping.　　B. Yes, I do.　　C. I'm shopping now.

四 听对话，根据对话内容判断句子正（T）误（F）。（10 分）

（　）1. Amy is going to Australia by plane.
（　）2. It is spring in Australia.
（　）3. Amy can play with snow in Australia this weekend.
（　）4. Amy's grandpa's birthday is on Thursday.
（　）5. Amy is making a birthday cake now.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出不同类的一项。（5 分）

（　）1. A. sing　　B. dancing　　C. listening
（　）2. A. February　　B. Friday　　C. December
（　）3. A. mine　　B. yours　　C. your
（　）4. A. clean　　B. make　　C. snowman
（　）5. A. second　　B. two　　C. seventh

六 看图写单词，补全句子。（5 分）

1. 
2. 
3. 

4. 

5. 

1. I often eat _____ at about 6；30 p. m.
2. Tim is _____ a book in the bedroom.
3. The art show is on May _____.
4. Tree Planting Day is on _____ 12th. It's coming.
5. I like _____. Because I can make a snowman with my friends.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. Bill's birthday is _____ the eighth day _____ April.
A. /；to　　B. in；in　　C. on；in
（　）2. —What _____ you do on the weekend?
—I often go hiking.
A. can　　B. do　　C. are
（　）3. _____ is on June 1st.
A. China's National Day　B. New Year's Day　C. Children's Day
（　）4. August is the _____ month of the year.
A. eighth　　B. seventh　　C. eight
（　）5. I like summer because I can _____.
A. go swimming　　B. make a snowman　　C. eat mooncakes
（　）6. —What are the monkeys doing?
—_____
A. They are climb.　　B. It is climbing　　C. They are climbing.
（　）7. —_____ maths book is that?
—It's _____.
A. Whose；him　　B. Whose；his　　C. Who's；yours

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 8. It's 8:00 p.m. They're _____. But they often go to _____ at 9:00 p.m.
A. sleep; sleeping B. sleeping; sleep C. sleeping; sleeping

( ) 9. —_____ on Saturdays?
—I often watch TV.
A. What do you do B. Where do you go C. Do you watch TV

( ) 10. —Is the rabbit jumping?
—_____
A. Yes, they do. B. No, it is. C. Yes, it is.

八 给下列问句选出相对应的答语。(10分)

( ) 1. When is China's National Day?
( ) 2. Are the boys climbing trees?
( ) 3. Why do you like autumn?
( ) 4. When do you get up in the morning?
( ) 5. What do you often do on the weekend?

A. No, they aren't.
B. At 7 o'clock.
C. On October 1st.
D. Because I can pick apples.
E. I often go shopping with my mum.

九 看图，根据问句写答句或根据答句写问句。(10分)

1. —What is your sister doing?
—_____



2. —Which season do you like best?
—_____



3. —When is your birthday?
—_____



4. —_____
—We are having an English class.



5. —_____
—It's Lily's.



十 选择正确的选项补全对话。(10分)

A. I like summer best.
B. I'm reading a book about seasons.
C. She is taking a dancing class.
D. Can your sister go swimming with us?
E. Because I can go swimming in summer.

Amy: What are you doing?
John: 1. _____
Amy: Which season do you like best?
John: 2. _____
Amy: I like summer, too. 3. _____
John: The weather is too hot. Let's go swimming.
Amy: Great! 4. _____
John: No, she can't. She is busy now.
Amy: What is she doing?
John: 5. _____
Amy: Oh, maybe next time. Let's go.

十一 阅读短文，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

I am Sarah. I have three good friends. They are Amy, John and Tom. Amy likes winter, because her birthday is in February. She is listening to music now. John's birthday is on April 1st. It's April Fool's Day. He likes sports. Look! He is playing basketball. Tom's birthday is in March. He likes spring, because he can fly kites in spring. Is he flying kites now? No, he is making kites. I like spring, because it is beautiful. What am I doing? I am reading a book.

( ) 1. Sarah has two good friends.
( ) 2. Amy likes winter, because her birthday is in January.
( ) 3. John's birthday is on April Fool's Day.
( ) 4. Tom is flying kites now.
( ) 5. Sarah is reading a book.

十二 看图写作。(10分)

现在是星期天上午十一点三十，根据图片介绍你的家庭成员正在干什么。可适当发挥。至少写五句话。开头已写好，不算入五句话内。



It is 11:30 on Sunday morning now. _____

荣德基 品质教辅



检测卷部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. clean the room　2. go shopping
3. take a dancing class
4. go for a walk
5. go swimming

二、1. When do you get up?
2. I eat lunch at school.
3. That's good exercise.
4. Do you play sports after school?
5. We finish class at 3∶40 p. m.

三、1. We play sports at 4 o'clock.
2. I have a computer class at 10∶30.
3. I work at night. I go to bed at 6∶30 in the morning.
4. We often eat dinner at 9∶30 p. m.
5. I do morning exercises at 7 o'clock.

四、1. When do you do morning exercises?
2. Do you often clean your bedroom?
3. What do you have on Monday?
4. Let's go and see tigers in the zoo.
5. What do you do in the evening?

答案：

一、4　5　2　3　1

二、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. B

三、

6∶30					√
7∶00			√		
10∶30				√	
4∶00	√				
9∶30		√			

四、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

五、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A

六、1. at　**点拨**：be good at 表示“擅长……”。
2. in　3. after　4. on　5. with

七、1. C
2. C　**点拨**：play 和球类名词连用时不加 the，与乐器类名词连用时加 the。play sports 做运动，固定用法。
3. B
4. A　**点拨**：在具体的某一时刻用介词 at；“在家”是 at home。
5. B

八、1. clean my/the room　2. go for a walk
3. eats breakfast　4. go shopping
5. have a dancing class

九、1. B　2. E　3. C　4. A　5. D

十、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. C

十一、范文：

Hello, everyone. I'm Yang Li. I'm a busy girl. I go to school from Monday to Friday. I usually get up at 6∶30. At 7∶00 I go to school on foot. Usually I have breakfast at about 7∶50 at school. The food is good. Then I do morning exercises. I go home at 5∶00 p. m. Then I help my mother clean rooms. I do my homework at 7∶30. At nine o'clock, I often go to bed.

Unit 2 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. I like summer because of Children's Day.
2. Spring is green with flowers and songs.
3. **W**: It's cold in winter, but I like snow so much.
4. I like autumn. There are lots of fruits on the farm.
5. **M**: I can fly a kite in spring.

二、1. Which season do you like best?
2. Why do you like autumn?
3. When do you go to school in the morning?
4. What do you often do on the weekend?
5. What's the weather like in spring here?

三、1. **W**: Hi, Bob! Which season do you like best?
M: Autumn. I often pick apples on the farm.
2. **W**: Which season do you like best, Tom?
M: Summer. I often go swimming with my dad.
3. **M**: My favourite season is summer. What about you, Sarah?
W: Me, too. I like summer vacation.
4. **M**: Hello, Mary! Do you like winter?
W: Yes, of course. I can play in the snow.
5. **M**: What's your favourite season, Lily?
W: Spring. I often go on a picnic with my family.

四、There are four seasons in a year. And I like spring best. The trees are green. There are pretty flowers everywhere. The weather is windy and warm. Children can fly kites in the park. I often go on a picnic with my friends. That's fun!

答案：

一、4　5　1　3　2

二、1. B　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. A

三、1—D　2—C　3—B　4—E　5—A

四、1. seasons　2. spring　3. best
4. warm　5. picnic

五、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. A

六、1. A
2. C　**点拨**：根据 Because 可知问句询问的是原因，选 Why。
3. B　**点拨**：去游泳是“go swimming”，是固定用法。
4. A　5. B　6. A
7. B　**点拨**：weather 是不可数名词，故 be 动词用 is；flowers 是可数名词复数形式，故 be 动词用 are。
8. C　9. A
10. C　**点拨**：because of 由于；因为，后面跟名词或名词短语；because 后面跟完整的句子。

七、1. spring; go on; picnic
2. season; seasons
3. pick; autumn
4. go swimming; summer
5. snowman; winter

八、1. There is lots of snow in winter.
2. Because I like summer vacation.
3. Which season do you like best?
4. I like winter best.（答案不唯一）
5. Yes, I do.

九、1. B　2. A　3. D　4. E　5. C

十、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

十一、范文：

My favourite season

I like winter best. Why? Because I can do something interesting. In winter, the weather is cold. It's white everywhere. I can play in the snow with my friends. I can go skating, too. Winter is my favourite season. What about you?

Unit 3 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. We often play games on Children's Day.
2. I like April, because I like the English party.
3. The summer vacation is in July and August.
4. My sister will make a birthday cake for me.
5. My mother's birthday is in May.

二、1. Happy New Year!
2. There will be a singing contest in December.
3. We all like November, because we will eat delicious food with our family on Thanksgiving Day.
4. Tom plants trees every year on Tree Planting Day in March.
5. Zhang Peng's birthday is in August.

三、1. Is your brother's birthday in January?
2. What will you do on Father's Day?
3. When is Teachers' Day?
4. Will you come to the party?
5. When is your birthday?

四、**W**: Hello, my name is Lucy. I like April because we have a dancing contest. Sarah likes snow, so she likes December very much. Amy likes June best. Why? Because Children's Day is in June. She can play games and get gifts on that day. Sam likes October, because we usually have the sports meet in October. Our English teacher Miss White likes summer vacation. Do you know her favourite months?

答案：

一、1. A　2. B　3. C　4. C　5. B

二、3　5　1　2　4

三、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. B　5. B

四、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. F　5. T

五、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. C

六、1. December; February　2. January
3. July; August　4. Children; Father
5. October

七、1. B　2. C　3. C　4. C　5. A
6. B　**点拨**：few 几乎没有，表示否定；a few 一些，表示肯定；a lot 常用来修饰动词。根据第二句“并且我经常读它们。”可知前一句表示肯定，卧室里有一些书。故选 B。　7. C
8. A　**点拨**：That's very kind of you! 是一个固定的说法，表示“你真好!”　9. A
10. C　**点拨**：will 后面跟动词原形。结合句意可知选 C。

八、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. A

九、1. When is　2. What will
3. Will; write him; his　4. Yes; do
5. The singing contest is usually in May.

十、1. D　2. B　3. E　4. A　5. C

十一、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. A

十二、范文：

My favourite month is March

My favourite month is March. There are a few fun things in March. Tree Planting Day is in March. We will plant trees with our teacher on the hill. March is in spring. I often go on a picnic with my good friends. And my mother's birthday is in this month, too. On that day, I will cook noodles for her.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. My birthday is in September.
2. I often make a snowman in winter.
3. Tree Planting Day is in March.
4. On the weekend, we often take a dancing class.
5. I always help my grandpa clean the rooms.

二、1. **A**: What do you often do on the weekend?
B: We often go on a picnic.
2. I don't like summer at all. It's too hot for me.
3. **A**: Which season do you like best?
B: Spring. We can plant trees then.
4. **A**: When is your birthday?
B: My birthday is in April.
5. **A**: When do you get up on Sunday?
B: We get up at 8 o'clock.

三、1. **M**: What do you do on the weekend, Chen Jie?
W: Usually I play the piano.
Question: What does Chen Jie do on the weekend?
2. **W**: What do you do?
M: I'm a doctor.
W: When do you go to work?
M: I go to work at 7∶30 a. m. And I go home at 5∶30 p. m.
Question: When does the doctor go home?
3. **M**: I like summer.
W: Why do you like summer?
M: Because I can swim in the river.
Question: Why does he like summer?
4. **W**: What's your favorite season?
M: My favorite season is winter. And you?
W: Spring.
Question: Which season does the boy like best?
5. **W**: When is your birthday, Tom?
M: It's on August 14th.
W: When is your mother's birthday?
M: Her birthday is on April 14th.
Question: When is Tom's mother's birthday?

四、**Sam**: Which season do you like best?
Linda: Summer.
Sam: Why?
Linda: Because I can go swimming. What about you?
Sam: I like winter. My birthday is in December.
Linda: My birthday is in July. Please come to my birthday party then.
Sam: OK, I will.

答案：

一、3 4 5 2 1
二、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
三、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C
四、1. season 2. Summer
3. go swimming 4. winter
5. December
五、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
六、1. Why 2. When 3. What
4. Which 5. When
七、1. C
2. A 点拨：月份前用介词 in。
3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B
8. B 9. A
10. C 点拨：that 作主语，后面的动词用单三形式；再根据句意可知选 C。
八、1. go swimming
2. take a dancing class
3. make a snowman
4. play sports; 5 o'clock
5. go on a picnic; September
九、spring; warm; pretty; trees; sing; picnic; trip; English; food; happy
点拨：先通读短文，了解短文大意，再细读各句，结合所缺单词的首字母猜测可能是哪个单词，最后填入单词后通读，流畅即可。
十、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
十一、范文：

I like spring

Spring is my favorite season. Because spring is beautiful. The air is fresh. The sky is blue and the clouds are white. The trees are green, and the flowers are red, yellow, white. The weather is warm. I like flying a kite with my father. We can plant trees. I like spring very much. What about you?

Unit 4 过关检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. Today is the second day of April.
2. My birthday is in February.
3. When is the art show?
4. —When is the maths test?
—It's on June 4th.
5. —When is the sports meet?
—It's on April 4th.
二、1. Today is July 30th.
2. It's April 5th today.
3. His birthday is on May 25th.
4. Christmas Day is on Dec. 25th.
5. The singing contest is on June 3rd.
三、1. Is there a birthday party in July?
2. When is your grandma's birthday?
3. What will you do for your mum?
4. Is it Mother's Day today?
5. When is your birthday?
四、W: Hello, I'm Lucy. I'm a quiet girl. Today is October 1st. It's China's birthday. Today is my birthday, too. I have a sister. Her name is Betty. Her birthday is in December. What about you?
答案：
一、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C
二、4 3 2 5 1
三、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C
四、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
五、1. E 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A
六、1. B
2. A 点拨：考查基数词和序数词的用法区别。本题横线后有可数名词复数，故用基数词。
3. A 4. C
5. C 点拨：在具体的某一天/某月某日，用介词 on。
6. A
7. B 点拨：九月是一年中的第九个月，故用序数词。nine 的序数词是 ninth。 8. C 9. B
10. C 点拨：二十以上的两位数变序数词时，只变个位数。
七、1. E 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C
八、1. How old is Mike?
2. When is China's National Day?
3. Is the English test on Dec. 4th?
4. Which season do you like best?
5. When is your birthday? / Whose birthday is on March 21st?
九、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. E 5. B
十、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
十一、范文：

My busy September

I'm busy in September. Teachers' Day is on September 10th. I'll make a card for Miss Chen. The English test is on September 15th. I'll play the *pipa* for my mum on September 20th. That's my mum's birthday. The school trip is in September, too. We'll go to the Great Wall on September 24th. What a busy month!

Unit 5 过关检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. mine 2. hers 3. theirs
4. drink 5. eat
二、1. It is sleeping.
2. It is very big. It is drinking by a river.
3. The pandas are climbing the bamboos.
4. The monkey is hungry. It is eating a banana.
5. The kangaroo is jumping.
三、1. Whose is she?
2. Whose dog is it?
3. Can I take him to the park?
4. Are these rabbits eating?
5. What is he doing?
四、A: Whose dog is it? Is it yours?
B: Yes, it's mine.
A: Look! It is jumping.
B: It is very funny. It is playing with a dog now.
A: Whose dog is that?
B: It's Chen Jie's dog. It's hers.
答案：
一、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B
二、4 1 5 3 2
三、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B
四、1. yours 2. mine 3. jumping
4. playing 5. hers
五、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
六、1. A 点拨：形容词性物主代词不能单独使用，后面需跟名词（词组）；名词性物主代词可以单独使用。本题中题空之后没有名词，故选 A。
2. B 3. C 4. B
5. A 点拨：由 "Look!" 可知动作正在发生：现在进行时的基本结构是 "be + 动词的-ing 形式"。
6. A 7. C 8. A 9. B
10. B 点拨：问句是一般现在时，答语也要用一般现在时。
七、1. climbing a tree 2. sleeping
3. drinking
4. eating lunch
5. jumping
八、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. A 5. C
九、1. are reading books
2. Is he dancing in the classroom?
3. No, they aren't.
4. Can you take him to the park?
点拨：本题考查 Can 引导的疑问句句式。看到句子的标点符号是 "?" 时，那就先找可以引导问句的特殊疑问词或者助动词。猜态动词等。可以先确定写 Can，再按着 Can 引导的一般疑问句句式即可连接出正确的句子。
5. Is the green picture his?
十、1. E 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D
十一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
十二、范文：
Look at the picture. There are some animals in it. Look at the elephants. They are drinking water. The monkey is climbing the big tree. The birds in the tree are singing. Under the tree, there are two bears. One bear is sleeping and the other is playing. The kangaroo is running. I think it's a funny picture.

Unit 6 过关检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. Look! The tiger is running!
2. —What are the pandas doing?
—They're sleeping.
3. —What is Mike doing?
—He's reading a book.
4. Quiet, please.
5. —Is she listening to music?
—Yes, she is.
二、1. Look there! The girl is eating an apple.
2. It's 7; 30. The students are doing morning exercises.
3. They are walking on a bridge. Keep to the right.
4. My father is playing football with his friends.
5. What are they doing at the park?
三、1. What are they doing?
2. What is she doing?
3. Can we use your crayons?
4. He is talking in the library.
5. Are you doing kung fu?
四、Quack, quack. I'm a duck. I have a nice photo. Look, this is my father. He's collecting leaves. This is my mother. She's helping my father. Look here. That is my sister. She is swimming in the river. What is my little brother doing? Oh, he's playing with a ball. And this is me. I am eating some delicious food. We have a nice trip.
答案：
一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A
四、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
五、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A
六、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B
6. A 点拨：Let me 后跟动词原形，表示 "让我做……"。
7. C 8. C
9. C 点拨：pandas 是复数形式，故排除 A 和 B；因句子是一般疑问句，表示 "一些" 用 any。
10. A 点拨：its 表示 "它的"，用作物主代词。it's 表示 "它是……"，是主语 + be 动词形式。
七、1. are doing morning exercises
2. No, she isn't.
3. Are the students having a Chinese class?
4. Yes, we are.
5. He is cleaning his bike.
八、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C
九、(一) 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
(二) 1. in the park 2. flying a kite
3. reading a book 4. drinking milk
5. at school
十、范文：

A happy day

I am Mike. Today is Sunday. It's a nice day. We are on my grandpa's farm. Listen! The birds are singing. Look! The dog is playing with a ball and the cat is climbing the tree. I am picking apples with my father. My mother is drawing. My grandpa is walking on the bridge. How happy we are!

期末检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. autumn 2. April 3. eat breakfast
4. drinking 5. twelfth
二、1. Look at the bear. It's sleeping.
2. He is cleaning the room.
3. My birthday is on July 25th.
4. Talk quietly, please.
5. Sometimes I go shopping with my parents.
三、1. Which season do you like best?
2. When do you eat breakfast?
3. What are Sarah and Amy doing?
4. When is your birthday?
5. What do you do on the weekend?
四、**John**: What will you do this weekend, Amy?
Amy: I will fly to Australia to visit my grandparents.
John: Is it spring there?
Amy: No, it is winter. And I can play with snow.
John: That is great!
Amy: Yes, and my grandpa's birthday is on Saturday.
John: So you can have a birthday party.
Amy: Yes! I am making a birthday card now.
John: Good! So, have a good time there.
Amy: Thank you.
答案：
一、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
三、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A
四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
五、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B
六、1. dinner 2. reading 3. 1st
4. March 5. winter
七、1. C 点拨：在具体的某一天用介词 on，在某个月份

里用介词 in。

2. B 3. C

4. A **点拨**：八月是一年中的第八个月，用序数词 eighth。

5. A

6. C **点拨**：问句是现在进行时，答语也要用现在进行时，且问句中 monkeys 是复数形式，故选 C。

7. B **点拨**：表示“谁的”用 whose；答语中横线之后没有名词，故横线上填名词性物主代词，him 是宾格，his 和 yours 是名词性物主代词。

8. B 9. A

10. C **点拨**：问句是现在进行时的一般疑问句，且主语 the rabbit 是单数形式，故肯定回答为：Yes，it is. 否定回答为：No，it isn't.

八、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. E

九、1. She is singing.

2. I like spring best.

3. It's on February 12th.

4. What are you doing?

5. Whose bike is it (this)?

十、1. B 2. A 3. E 4. D 5. C

十一、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

十二、**范文**：

It is 11：30 on Sunday morning now. My family are at home. My mother is cooking in the kitchen. My father is reading a book. My sister is drawing a picture. I am cleaning my room. We are having a good time.

课时部分

Unit 1 My day

Part A

课时 1

一、**听力材料**：

Mike：Amy，when do you get up?

Amy：I get up at 6；00.

Mike：When do you get to school?

Amy：I get to school at 9；00.

Mike：When do you start class?

Amy：We begin class at 9；20.

Mike：When do you eat lunch?

Amy：We have lunch at 12；20.

Mike：When do you go back home in the afternoon?

Amy：At 4；30.

答案：

一、1. A 2. C

二、1. what time 2. When

3. When/What time 4. When

5. What time **点拨**：what time 和 when 的辨别：①询问做某事的具体时间（钟点）时两者可以互换。②询问钟表所表示的具体时间（钟点）时只能用 what time 而不能用 when。③询问事件发生的年份、月份、日期等非钟点性时间时只能用 when 而不能用 what time。

三、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A

5. C **点拨**：在具体的某一时刻（几点或几点几分）用介词 at；在早晨、下午用介词 in。

四、（一）7 6 1 5 2 3 4

方法点拨：本题用**确定首句法**解答。先把所有句子通读一遍，发现给出的句子有一定的时间顺序，大致确定第三句为首句，再根据时间依次排列后面的句子即可。

（二）1. at 8 o'clock 2. eat lunch

3. go back home 4. at about 6；40

课时 2

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B

二、1. B；exercises 2. A；eat

3. E；class 4. C；sports

5. D；breakfast

三、1. eat breakfast 2. eat dinner

3. have English class 4. play sports

5. do morning exercises

四、1. B **点拨**：由答语可知问句问的是时间，故选 B。

2. C 3. B

4. A **点拨**：exercise 泛指“锻炼，运动”时，通常是不可数名词，如：Running is good exercise. 但是在表示具体的一套动作时，要用复数形式，如：do morning exercises；do eye exercises。

五、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. C

课时 3

一、（一）1. o'clock clean clever

2. play please plate eggplants

（二）1. clothes uncle cloudy

2. apple plenty people

3. It is cloudy today.（答案不唯一）

二、1. please 2. plate 3. clever

4. clock 5. classroom

三、1. clothes 2. eggplants 3. cloudy 4. clever

四、1. classroom 2. clocks 3. player；playground

五、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B

周末加油站（一）

听力材料：

一、1. I do morning exercises at 6 o'clock.

2. We start class at 8 o'clock.

3. I often eat dinner at 8；00 p. m.

4. We have Chinese class at 10；30.

5. We play sports at about 4 o'clock.

二、1. Wow! That's too late.

2. I play ping-pong with my friends after school.

3. We finish class at 4；30 in the afternoon.

4. My parents always get up early every day.

三、1. —When do you do morning exercises?

—At 7；00 a. m.

2. We play sports every day.

3. I often eat dinner with my parents.

4. Chen Jie often does morning exercises on Sundays.

答案：

一、3 1 4 5 2

二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F

三、1. When；At 2. play sports

3. eat dinner 4. morning exercises

四、1. clean 2. clock 3. plate 4. eggplant

五、1. —When do you do morning exercises?

—At 8 o'clock.

2. —When do you eat lunch?

—At 12 o'clock.

3. —When do you do sports?

—At 3 o'clock.

4. —When do you have English class?

—At 10 o'clock.

六、1. C 2. C 3. B

4. A **点拨**：在具体某一时刻用介词 at；“在家”是短语 at home。 5. B

七、1. do morning exercises 2. do sports

3. eats breakfast 4. have a music class

八、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. D

九、1. go to bed 2. 3；00 p. m

3. eat lunch 4. 6；30 p. m.

5. eat dinner **方法点拨**：本题用**关键信息定位法**解答。短语主要介绍了 Baby 一天的作息时间，通读短文之后，我们根据表格中的关键信息快速定位到短文的相应位置，找出答案。例如表格第一栏中“8：30”就是关键信息，在短文中快速找到这个词，读它前后的句子即可找出答案。第二栏中“get up”则为关键信息。

Part B&C

课时 4

一、**听力材料**：

M：Hell，Sarah.

W：Hello! How are you?

M：Fine. What do you do on the weekend?

W：I often do my homework and watch TV. Sometimes I play ping-pong with my friend.

M：That sounds like a lot of fun.

W：Yes，but I'm also helpful. I usually wash clothes and clean our rooms. Sometimes I go shopping with my mother.

M：You're so busy!

答案：

一、1. A E 2. C F 3. B D

二、1. E 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D

三、1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B

方法点拨：本题用**抓关键信息法**解答。在读问句之后要抓住问句的关键信息。本题中 1－3 小题是特殊疑问句，特殊疑问词就是关键信息。1 小题 why 询问原因，通常用 because 回答；2 小题 what 询问事情；3 小题 when 询问时间；4 小题是一般疑问句，要用“Yes …”或“No …”回答。这样就能快速找出答语。

四、1. What do you do on the weekend?

2. When do you often read books?

点拨：after dinner 表示“晚饭后”，指的是时间，所以用 when 来提问。

3. You need a robot to help you.

4. I'm hard-working，too.

五、5 3 1 6 4 2

课时 5

一、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

二、1. C 2. B 3. C

4. A **方法点拨**：本题用**排除法**解答。题空之后有实义动词 wash，故不能再填系动词 am；排除 C；若选 B 选项表示频率，应当是 sometimes；故答案为 A。

5. B

三、1. B；for 2. B；take 3. C；with 4. C；on

5. C；him **点拨**：介词后人称代词用宾格形式，he 的宾格形式是 him。

四、1. take a dancing class；I do

2. do；go shopping with

3. I always clean my room.

4. What do you often do on Sundays?

课时 6

一、go；go running go shopping go swimming

play：play sports play ping-pong play the *pipa*

have：have class have dinner

do：do homework do kung fu do morning exercises

二、1. on 2. from 3. with 4. at 5. in

三、1. Sometimes I clean my cave.

2. Robinson is good at sports.

3. Sometimes I go swimming in the river.

4. Robinson always gets up late in the morning.

四、1. E 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B

五、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T

方法点拨：此题用**细节理解法**解答。先通读短文，然后做题的时候根据题目的关键信息再回到短文中找到原句，仔细对比，确定正误。例如 1 小题，短文原句是“I am a policeman.”但是题目是“John is a policewoman.”与短文原文不符，故填 F。

周末加油站（二）

听力材料：

一、1. clean the room 2. go shopping 3. take a dancing class

4. go for a walk 5. go swimming

二、1. Why do you go shopping today? 2. Robin is in a play.

3. Where is the island?

4. We usually take a dancing class on Monday.

三、1. When do you do morning exercises?

2. Do you often clean your room?

3. Why are you shopping today?

4. What do you do in the evening?

答案：

一、4 5 2 3 1

二、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C

三、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A

四、1. take a dancing class 2. go shopping

3. go for a walk 4. clean my room

五、1. I sometimes go for a walk on Saturday.

2. I often clean my room on Sunday.

3. I always take a dancing class with my classmates on the weekend.

六、1. lunch dinner 2. win take

3. often sometimes 4. why when

七、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B

八、1. go for a walk 2. take a dancing class

3. What do you always do on Saturday?

4. I often go shopping with my mum.（答案不唯一）

九、5 4 3 1 6 2

十、**范文**：

My busy Sunday

My name is Jane. I usually get up at 6；30 a. m. I do morning exercises at 7；00 a. m. Then I eat breakfast at 7；30 a. m. After breakfast，I do my homework. Sometimes I read books. In the afternoon，I usually play basketball with my classmates. In the evening，I go for a walk with my grandparents after dinner. This is my busy Sunday.

Unit 2 My favourite season

Part A

课时 1

一、**听力材料**：

—Which season do you like best?

—I like winter best. I like the snow. What about you?

—I don't like winter. It's too cold. I like spring best. It's warm and sunny.
—Yes. It's pretty too.

答案：

一、圈：spring；cold；winter；snow

二、1. B　2. A　3. D　4. C

三、1. B　2. A

3. A　**点拨**：此句后面跟动词原形，表示“将要做……”。　4. C　5. B

6. A　**点拨**：询问天气的两种表达方式：What is the weather like? 和 How is the weather?

四、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. D

五、1. It is very pretty.　2. Which season do you like best?

3. What is the weather like?

4. We will draw the seasons today.

六、4 1 3 2 6 5

课时 2

一、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A

二、1. summer；B　2. winter；D

3. autumn；C　4. spring；A

三、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C

四、1. √　2. √　3. ×　4. ×　5. ×

五、1. —Which season do you like best?
—I like autumn best.

2. —Which season do you like best?
—I like winter best.

方法点拨：仿写句子的题型我们用**举一反三法**解答。本题主要的句型是“—Which season do you like best? —I like …best.”问句不变，答语的结构也不变，我们只需要将答语中的季节替换成图片所表达的季节名称即可。

课时 3

一、1. gr　2. gr　3. br　4. br　5. gr

二、1—C　2—D　3—A　4—B

三、1. brother　2. umbrella　3. breakfast　4. purple

四、1. C　**方法点拨**：本题用**规律记忆法**解答。规律：以元音音素开头的单词前冠词用 an。根据题空前的 an 可知题空上填的是以元音音素开头的单词。AB 都是辅音音素开头的，C 是元音音素开头的单词。

2. B　**点拨**：grandma 是第三人称单数，作主语时，谓语动词用单三形式。　3. A　4. C

五、1. Which season　2. I want to paint a picture.

3. like；best

六、1—A—d　2—B—b　3—D—c　4—C—a

方法点拨：本题用“一对应法”解答。第一遍通读短文，了解短文大意。读第二遍的时候，每读一个人物的信息，然后将其喜欢的季节以及相应的活动一一连起来，然后再读下一个人物的相关信息。

周末加油站（三）

听力材料：

一、1. It's rainy today.

2. The farmers are busy in autumn.

3. Spring is green.

4. What's your favourite season?

5. I can go swimming in summer.

二、1. Spring is green with flowers and songs.

2. We often play in the snow in winter.

3. I can fly a kite in spring.

4. I like summer because I can eat ice cream.

三、1. I like summer，but I can't swim.

2. What is the weather like in autumn here?

3. It's windy and warm in spring.

4. Winter is white and the year is gone.

5. Autumn is good，but my favourite season is winter.

答案：

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. C

二、3　2　4　1

三、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. F

四、spring　summer　autumn　winter

六、1. summer　winter　autumn

2. blue　brown　black

3. windy　cloudy　sunny

七、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B

八、1. It's cool in autumn.

2. Summer is hot and the days are long.

3. Spring is green with flowers everywhere.

（答案不唯一）

九、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. A　5. C

十、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F

Part B&C

课时 4

一、**听力材料：**

I am Sarah. My favourite season is spring. I can wear shirts. Spring is green. The flowers are beautiful. And the air is so fresh. In spring，it's usually windy and warm. I can fly kites.

答案：

一、圈：spring；green；flowers；warm；fly kites

二、1. D　2. A　3. B　4. C

三、1. B　**点拨**：look 后面跟着的具体事物时要加介词 at。

2. A

3. C　**点拨**：I 是第一人称，动词用原形；Sarah 是第三人称单数，动词用单三形式。　4. A　5. B

四、1. autumn　2. Why do you like autumn?

3. warm　4. are pretty

5. I often go for a walk with my friends.

五、4　1　6　3　2　5

课时 5

一、1. go for a picnic　2. pick apples

3. go swimming　4. make a snowman

二、1. √

2. ×　**方法点拨**：本题用**常识法**解答。根据常识可知北京的夏天不会有雪，故此题错误。

3. √　4. √　5. √

三、1. pick　**点拨**：can 是情态动词，情态动词后跟动词的原形。　2. play

3. swimming　**点拨**：去游泳是“go swimming”固定用法。

四、1. A　**方法点拨**：本题用**前后一致法**解答。there be 句型中 be 动词的形式要和句子主语的单复数保持一致。本题中句子的主语是 flowers，是可数名词的复数形式，因此 be 动词用 are。　2. C　3. C　4. B

五、1. A　2. E　3. B　4. C　5. D

六、1. spring；have a picnic　2. winter；make a snowman

3. autumn；pick apples

课时 6

一、1. C　**方法点拨**：本题用**排除法**解答。snow 是不可数名词，many 只能修饰可数名词复数形式，排除 A；B 是错误的表达，排除 B；lots of 即可修饰可数名词又可修饰不可数名词。　2. B　3. C　4. C

二、1. Where；E　2. When；A　3. Which；B

4. Why；C　5. What；D

三、1. Which season do you like best?

2. I can go swimming every day.

3. There are beautiful flowers everywhere.

4. I often play in the snow.

四、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. F

周末加油站（四）

听力材料：

一、1. summer　2. picnic　3. swimming　4. best　5. which

二、1. go swimming　2. plant trees　3. go on a picnic

4. make a snowman　5. pick apples

三、**John**：Which season do you like best，Sarah?

Sarah：I like summer best.

John：Why?

Sarah：I can go swimming. What about you?

John：I like autumn best. I love the colours.

Sarah：Yes. The colours are beautiful. And we can pick apples.

答案：

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B

二、3　1　4　5　2

三、1. season　2. summer　3. go swimming

4. autumn　5. pick apples

四、1. I like spring because I can go on a picnic.

2. I like autumn because I can pick apples.

3. I like summer because I can go swimming.

4. I like winter because I can make a snowman.

五、1. A　2. C　3. B

4. C　**点拨**：由答语可知问句问的是原因，故选 Why。　5. A

六、1. go swimming　2. spring3. go on a picnic　4. Yes；I do

七、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. A　5. A

八、范文：

I like summer best

Summer is my favourite season. The days are long. There is a summer vacation. Many students like it. I like it，too. It is hot. I can swim. I can eat ice cream. I can eat watermelons. What about you?

Unit 3 My school calendar

Part A

课时 1

一、**听力材料：**

Lily：We have a school trip this term.

Mike：When is it?

Lily：It's in April. After that，we have a singing contest. It's in April，too.

Mike：Cool! When is the sports meet?

Lily：It's in May.

答案：

一、1. 4　2. 5　3. 4

二、1. D　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. E

三、1. B

2. C　**方法点拨**：此题用**对比记忆法**解答。a few 用来修饰可数名词，表示肯定的意义，意为“几个，一些”；little 和 a little 都用来修饰不可数名词，little 表示否定的意义，意为“几乎没有”；a little 表示肯定的意义，意为“一些；一点儿”。

3. A　4. C　5. B

四、1. It is usually in April.

2. When is the Chinese test?

3. We have a school trip in May.

五、1. in April　2. it isn't　3. in April　4. It's in May

课时 2

一、1. June　2. March　3. May

4. January　5. April　6. February

二、1. A；E　2. B；D　3. C；F

三、1. C　2. C　3. B

4. A　**点拨**：简略回答一般疑问句时，答语的主语用代词替换。本题问句的主语是 your birthday，故代词用 it。

四、1. F　2. F　3. T　4. F

方法点拨：本题用**常识法**解答。本题主要是考查几个常见节日或假期所在的月份。父亲节在 6 月；元旦在 1 月；寒假在 1 月和 2 月；母亲节在 5 月。

五、1. Children's Day；in June

2. is the singing contest；in February

3. When is Mother's Day? It's in May.

方法点拨：仿写句子的题型我们用**举一反三法**解答。本题主要的句型是“—When is …? —It is in …”。问句中我们只需要替换节日或活动的名称；答语只需要替换成相应的月份即可。

课时 3

一、1. 圈：shoes；shoe；shop

2. 圈：brush；wash；T-shirt

3. 圈：much；chair

4. 圈：watch；China；March

二、1. D　2. B　3. C　4. A

三、1. A　2. C

3. B　**点拨**：shorts 是可数名词复数形式，be 动词用 are。　4. A

四、（一）1. shoes　2. China　3. sheep 4. Children's Day

（二）1. China　Children's

2. shoes　sheep

五、1. B　2. C　3. C　4. A

周末加油站（五）

听力材料：

一、1. —When is Tree Planting Day?
—It's in March.

2. We have a sports meet in April.

3. —When is the singing contest?
—It's usually in May.

4. Happy Children's Day.

5. Winter vacation is in January and February.

二、1. When is Mother's Day?

2. Is New Year's Day in January?

3. Is June in spring in China?

4. When do you eat lunch?

三、1. Tree Planting Day is usually in March.

2. My birthday is in Feb.

3. The Chinese test is in Jan.

4. The English party is in April.

答案：

一、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. F

二、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A

三、1. March　2. February　3. January　4. April

四、1. March 2. April 3. May 4. June
五、1. New Year's Day is in January.
2. Tree Planting Day is in March.
3. Mother's Day is in May.
4. Children's Day is in June.
六、1. B E H 2. A D G 3. C F I
七、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
八、1. —When is New Year's Day?
—It's in January.
2. —When is Tree Planting Day?
—It's in March.
3. —When is winter vacation?
—It's in January and February.
九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
方法点拨：本题用**抓关键信息法**解答。通读短文后会发现短文主要描述了“我们”一家人生日的相关信息。做题的时候先读题目，看看题目是关于哪个人物的，然后将人物名称作为关键信息，快速在短文中定位到相应的人物，然后找出相应的信息，判断句子是否正确。

Part B&C

课时 4

一、听力材料：
Mother's Day is coming. Lily will make a card for her mother. And she will sing to her mother, too. Mike will tell a story to his mother. He likes playing the *pipa*. So he will play the *pipa*, too.
答案：
一、画；make a card；sing to her；tell a story；play the *pipa*
二、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B
三、1. Lily 2. Amy 3. Lucy 4. Mike 5. Peter
四、1. B 2. A
3. B **点拨**：在某个月份里用介词 in。 4. C
5. B **点拨**：“will + 动词原形”表示“将要做某事”。
五、1. When is the school trip?
2. What will you do
3. Is autumn your favourite season?
4. I will make a card for her.
5. I will say “Thank you” to him.

课时 5

一、1. September 2. December 3. October 4. November
二、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. A
三、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B
四、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T
方法点拨：本题用**常识法**解答。暑假在 7 月和 8 月；美国的感恩节在 11 月；儿童节在 6 月；吃月饼是中秋节的传统习俗。
五、1. When is 2. What will; do 3. When do
4. It's in December.

课时 6

一、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A
二、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C
三、1. in 2. at 3. at
4. in 5. with
四、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C
五、1. April 21st, 7; 30 p. m.
方法点拨：本题用**细节理解法**解答。短文第二句和第三句“Today is April 20th. Tomorrow is my birthday.”意为：今天是 4 月 20 号，明天是我的生日。由此可知“我”的生日是在 4 月 21 日。短文倒数第二句提到派对将在 7 点半开始。
2. Amy's birthday 3. Amy's home
4. We will eat the birthday cake.
We will sing and dance.
We will play many games.

周末加油站（六）

听力材料：
一、1. riddle 2. Christmas 3. November
4. Thanksgiving Day 5. July
二、1. It's usually in January or February.
2. Please send me an email in March.
3. We'll go to the Great Wall on Christmas.
4. We have a school trip in October.
5. When is the summer holiday? Is it in July?
三、Hello, my name is Lucy. I like April because we have a dancing contest. Sarah likes snow, so she likes December very much. Amy likes June best. Why? Because Children's Day is in June. She can play games and get gifts on that day. Sam likes October, because we usually have the sports meet in October. Our English teacher Miss White likes summer vacation. Do you know her favourite months?
答案：
一、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B
二、3 1 5 2 4
三、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
四、1. July 2. August 3. September
4. December
五、1. Teachers' Day is in September.
2. China's National Day is in October.
3. American Thanksgiving Day is in November.
4. Christmas is in December.
六、1. August 2. July 3. November
4. September 5. October 6. December
七、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B
八、1. C 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. D
九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
十、范文：

My favourite festival

My favourite festival is Mid-Autumn Day. It's usually in September. I will have a big dinner with my family. We will make mooncakes and eat mooncakes. We will enjoy the moon in the evening on that day.

Recycle 1

一、1. B
2. C **点拨**：在具体的某一时刻用介词 at；在早上是 in the morning。 3. B 4. A
5. C **点拨**：当中国是夏天的时候，澳大利亚是冬天。
二、1. make a snowman 2. go on a picnic
3. plant trees 4. help; cook 5. get up; At six
三、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. E
四、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

Unit 4 When is the art show?

Part A

课时 1

一、听力材料：
Ann：What's your favourite festival?
Tom：May Day and China's National Day.
Ann：When is May Day this year?
Tom：It's on May 1st. And China's National Day is on October 1st.
Ann：Do you like Children's Day?
Tom：Yes. It's on June 1st.
答案：
一、1. E 3. C 4. D
二、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B
三、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A
四、1. on May 1st 2. It's on June 1st.
3. Yes, it is.
五、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. E

课时 2

一、1. five 2. March 3. first
4. English test（答案不唯一）
二、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
三、1. C 2. A
3. B **点拨**：五月是一年中的第五个月份。five 的序数词是 fifth。 4. B 5. B
四、1. six 2. fourth 3. second 4. one
五、1. —When is Miss Chen's birthday?
—It's on September 2nd.
2. —When is the school trip?
—It's on March 5th.
方法点拨：仿写句子的题型我们用**举一反三法**解答。本题主要的句型是“—When is …? —It's on + 日期。”每道题主要的句型都不变，我们只需要替换问句中活动或节日的名称以及答语中的日期。

课时 3

一、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
二、1. second 2. thin 3. brother
4. maths 5. thirteen
三、1. B **点拨**：在英语中，习惯用星期天作为一周的第一天，故一周的第五天就是星期四。
2. C **点拨**：语文老师是“Chinese teacher”，China 是名词；English 是以元音音素开头的单词，前面的冠词用 an；故选 C，maths teacher 数学老师。
3. A
4. C **点拨**：句意：我们一周上 5 天学。句中空处表示数量，用基数词。
5. B **点拨**：句意：今天是他的三岁生日。用序数词 third。
四、1. Mother's 2. These 3. They 4. this 5. health
五、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
方法点拨：此题用**细节理解法**解答。通过细读短文，再针对每个题返回短文找出相关的语句，仔细对比句意。例如 3 小题，由短文中“She likes autumn best, because Teachers' Day is in September.”我们可以知道李老师最喜欢秋天，因为教师节在九月，由此判断李老师喜欢教师节，故此题正确。

周末加油站（七）

听力材料：
一、1. Tim is thin.
2. The school trip is on March 5th.
3. This is our music room.
4. The blue shorts are nice.
5. His mother is a science teacher.
二、1. —When is the art show?
—It's on May 1st.
2. —When is your birthday?
—It's on March 3rd.
3. We have a school trip on April 2nd.
4. I will visit my grandparents on July 4th.
5. On June 5th, we have a sports meet.
三、1. When is May Day?
2. What will you do on Mid-Autumn Day?
3. When is China's National Day?
4. Which month do you like best?
答案：
一、1. thin 2. March 5th 3. This 4. shorts 5. mother
二、3 4 1 5 2
方法点拨：此题用**听关键词法**解答，仔细观察图片，可以看出本题主要是考查日期的表达。那么我们在听听力的时候重点关注日期的关键词。例如 1 小题，听力材料中关于日期的表达是“April 1st”，那么我们就要找到 4 月 1 日的日历图。
三、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C
四、1. Tiger is the first.
2. Elephant is the third.
3. Bird is the fourth.
4. Pig is the fifth.
五、1. fifth 2. first 3. fourth 4. second 5. third
六、1. E 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B
七、1. B
2. B **点拨**：当日期只有月份时用介词 in；当日期是几月几日时用介词 on。本题题空前是 in，那横线上填表示月份的词，所以选择 B。 3. C 4. C
5. C **点拨**：句意：这是五月的第……个星期天。故横线上应当填序数词。
八、1. May 4th 2. It's on June 1st.
3. When is 4. No, it isn't.
九、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F

Part B&C

课时 4

一、听力材料：
W：When is your mother's birthday?
M：It's on May 14th.
W：May 14th? That's Mother's Day this year.
M：Yes. It's a special day.
W：What will you do for your mother?
M：I'll go shopping and buy a gift for her.
答案：
一、1. A 2. E
二、1. March 1st 2. April 2nd 3. May
三、1. A **方法点拨**：本题用**规律记忆法**解答。介词 in，on，at 的使用规律：在某个月份用介词 in；在具体的某月某日用介词 on；在具体的某一时刻（几点或几点几分）用介词 at。
2. C
3. B **点拨**：will 后面跟动词原形，表示“将要做……”。
4. A 5. B
6. B **点拨**：句意：今天是我妈妈的生日。用 my mother 的所有格形式“my mother's”。
四、5 4 1 6 7 2 3
五、1. It's on Jan. 1st.
2. Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
3. My mother's birthday is on June 13th.（答案不唯一）
4. I will cook noodles for him/my father.

课时 5

一、1. 12th　2. twenty-three　3. 31st
　4. twenty-second　5. twentieth
二、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. F
三、1. twentieth　2. twenty-eight　3. second　4. ten
四、1. B　**点拨**：在具体的某月某日用介词 on。
　2. C　**点拨**：表达日期要用序数词。　3. A
五、1. A　2. C　3. D　4. B
六、1. three　2. eleven　3. November 21st
　4. mother's　5. March 5th　6. father's
　7. August 9th（答案不唯一）

课时 6

一、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. B　5. B
　方法点拨：此题用分类记忆法解答。根据单词的不同类别或词性将单词进行分类。例如：1 小题中 A、B 选项都是基数词，C 选项是序数词；2 小题中 A 选项是名词，B、C 选项是动词；5 小题中 A、C 选项是形容词，B 选项是动词。
二、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. D
三、1. two　2. 3rd　3. sixth　4. twelve
四、1. Their eyes are open on April 22nd.
　2. My cat has two new kittens.
　3. They can play with Robin.
　4. My birthday is on November 20th.
　（4 小题答案不唯一）
五、1. March 15th　2. April 1st　3. April 20th
　4. B　5. A

周末加油站（八）

听力材料：

一、1. March the fifth
　2. July the twenty-first
　3. September the twentieth
　4. December the twenty-third
　5. January the thirteenth
二、1. December is the twelfth month of the year.
　2. I live on the thirtieth floor of this building.
　3. The little boy still can run.
　4. This shop is open. We can buy food.
　5. My pet dog has black and white fur.
三、1. It's on November 13th.
　2. When is the English test?
　3. Monday is his 20th birthday.
　4. They make noises when they are hungry.
　5. Mike's birthday is on May 23rd.

答案：

一、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F
二、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A
三、1. 13th　2. test　3. 20th　4. noises
　5. Mike's
四、1. December the thirteenth
　2. October the twenty-second
　3. May the thirtieth
　4. July the seventeenth
六、1. B
　2. A　**点拨**：核树节在 3 月 12 日，12 序数词的简写是 12th，不是 12nd。
　3. A　**点拨**：make noises 制造噪音。
七、1. twenty　2. eighth　3. thirteen　4. twelfth
八、1. C　2. D　3. A　4. B
九、1. —When is Tim's mother's birthday?
　—It's on May 21st.
　2. —When is Tree Planting Day?
　—It's on March 12th.
　3. —When is Christmas Day?
　—It's on December 25th.
十、(一) 1. There are five (special days).
　2. No, it isn't.
　(二)

Special Days	Dates
Teachers' Day	September 10th
China's National Day	October 1st
Mid-Autumn Day	September 24th
The dancing contest	November 11th

　方法点拨：此题用**格关键信息法**解答。通过观察表格，我们可知表格统计的主要信息是特殊的日子和日期，因此我们在读短文时，可以将所有特殊的日子和相应的日期圈出来，然后一一对应地填入表格。
十一、范文：
　There are four people in my family. They are my father, my mother, my sister and me. My father's birthday is on July 5th. My mother's birthday is in February. My sister's birthday is in February, too. My birthday is on September 11th. On our birthdays, we eat a big cake. We sing and dance. My mum usually cooks a big dinner. What about you?

Unit 5 Whose dog is it?

Part A

课时 1

一、**听力材料：**
—Mum, where is my schoolbag?
—Is it on your chair?
—No, it's my brother's. It isn't mine.
—Is it on your bed?
—Oh, no. This is the blue one. I want the red one.
—Is it under your desk?
—Yes. It's there.

答案：
一、B
二、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T
三、1. B　**点拨**：the picture of…表示“……的照片/图片”，是固定用法。　2. B　3. A
　4. C　**方法点拨**：本题用**排除法**解答。第一题空后因为有名词 bag，填形容词性物主代词，而 yours 是名词性物主代词，故排除 B 选项；第二题空后没有名词，填名词性物主代词，her 是形容词性物主代词，故排除 A 选项。
四、1. Whose; is this　2. Yes, they are.
　3. books; Lucy's
五、1. yours　2. mine　3. My　4. hers　5. your　6. Mike's　7. His

课时 2

一、1. he　I　it　we　they
　2. my　our　your
　3. mine　theirs　ours　yours
二、1. A　2. C　3. E　4. D　5. B
三、1. C　2. A　3. B
四、1. mine　2. her; his　3. yours
　4. ours; John's　5. Whose; Amy's
　方法点拨：本题用**口诀记忆法**来记忆形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词的区别。
　口诀：形容词性能力差，自己不能来当家，
　句子当中作定语，身后定把名词跟；
　物主代词名词性，相当名词可单用，
　句中充当主宾表，身后没有名词影；
　两种代词形不同，各个与形容名，
　his、its 不用变，my 变 mine 要记清。
五、1. The book is hers.　2. It's your toy.
　3. This classroom is theirs.
　4. These storybooks are John's.

课时 3

一、1. trunk　2. sing　3. thinks　4. ink
二、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. A　5. C
三、1. trunk　ink　drinks　think
　2. long　eating　dancing　morning　sing　song
四、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. A
五、1. C　2. A　3. D　4. B

周末加油站（九）

听力材料：

一、1. The bird can sing.
　2. They are theirs.
　3. Are these her storybooks?
　4. It's Amy's book.
　5. Oh, I like pink.
二、1. This is Amy. The bike is hers.
　2. Look at the pink crayon. It's mine.
　3. Look at the elephant. The long trunk is its.
　4. These are their dogs. They're theirs.
　5. These storybooks are Tom's. They are his.
三、1. —Whose English book is that?
　—It's his.
　2. —Whose storybook is this?
　—It's hers.
　3. —Is this your pen?
　—Yes, it is. Thank you.
　4. My dear, it's not only your dog. It's also mine.
　5. Oh, these rabbits are theirs.

答案：

一、1. A　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. B
　方法点拨：本题用**理解句意法**解答。对于“选出句子中所包含的单词”类的题目，我们在听的时候不能只听其中的某个词，要听并理解整体的句意。有些单词发音相同或很相似，如果不理解句意就很容易选错，例如 2 小题中的 their 和 there；3 小题中的 here 和 her 等。
二、1—D　2—E　3—A　4—B　5—C
三、1. Whose　2. hers　3. your　4. mine　5. theirs
四、1. This storybook is his.
　2. These kittens are theirs.
　3. This bike is yours.
　4. These pencils are ours.
六、1. hers　2. his　3. mine　4. ours
　5. theirs　6. yours
七、1. A　2. B
　3. A　**点拨**：句意：哪一个瓶子是迈克的？选 A。
　4. A　5. C
八、1. mine　2. ours　3. Whose; his
九、1. Whose　2. They are theirs.　3. Yes, they are.
　4. That English book is hers.
十、1. her; hers　2. Jack's; his; his
　3. Jack and Amy's; their; theirs

Part B&C

课时 4

一、**听力材料：**
　Chen Jie：Where is my cat?
　Sam：Look! It's over there.
　Chen Jie：Is it drinking water?
　Sam：No, it isn't.
　Chen Jie：Is it eating?
　Sam：No. It's playing with a ball.
　Chen Jie：Oh! Let's play with it.
　Sam：OK.

答案：
一、D
二、1—C　2—A　3—B
三、1. C
　2. A　**点拨**：问句是现在进行时的一般疑问句，主语是 he。肯定回答为：Yes, he is. 否定回答为：No, he isn't.
　3. B　**点拨**：问句是现在进行时，答语也应当是现在进行时，排除 C。答语首先否定了问句，故不能选 A。答案为 B。　4. C
　5. C　**点拨**：take …to…表示“带……去……”，是固定用法。
四、1. drinking water
　2. he isn't; is eating
　点拨：现在进行时的基本结构“主语 + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式”，注意不要丢掉 be 动词。
五、1. E　2. D　3. B　4. A　5. C

课时 5

一、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. C　5. A
二、1. eating　2. sleeping　3. drinking
　4. climbing　5. jumping
三、1. B　2. A
　3. A　**点拨**：由答语可知句子的时态是现在进行时。问句是现在进行时的一般疑问句，由 be 动词开头。主语是 the dog，故 be 动词用 is。　4. B　5. C
四、1. C　2. B　3. D　4. A
　方法点拨：此题用**格关键信息法**解答。根据问句中的关键词确定答语。例如：2 小题是 can 开头的一般疑问句，回答也要用 can；3 小题 where 询问地点；1 和 4 小题都是现在进行时的一般疑问句，但是 1 小题是复数形式，4 小题是单数形式。找到关键词就可以快速定位答语。
五、1. climbing a tree　2. eating
　3. It is sleeping; It is playing (with a ball)

课时 6

一、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B
二、1. want　2. excited　3. quiet　4. like　5. copying
三、1. her; hers; ours　2. his　3. your; mine
四、1. They are in the zoo.
　2. They are flying and singing in the sky.
　3. They are playing with a ball.
　4. She is eating bananas.

周末加油站（十）

听力材料：

一、1. I'm thirsty. I'm drinking water now.
　2. The bird is flying in the sky.

3. The boys are playing basketball on the playground.
4. The dog is jumping up and down now.
5. Look! The students are running fast to catch the bus.

二、1. Mike is reading.
2. It's her book.
3. Can you take him to the park?
4. I'm dancing like a bear.

三、**Lily**: What are you doing here, Jim?
Jim: I am playing with my cat.
Lily: Is the picture yours?
Jim: Yes, it is mine. It's my cat.
Lily: Where is your dog?
Jim: It's in the room.
Lily: Is it sleeping?
Jim: No, it isn't. It's eating.

答案：

一、3 1 4 5 2

方法点拨：此题用**听关键词法**解答。听之前先看看图片，会发现都是表示“动作”的图片，然后大概知道都是哪几个动作，听的时候注意每个小题中提到的动词短语就是关键信息，然后对应到相应的图片。

二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B

三、1. playing 2. yours 3. mine
4. sleeping
5. eating

四、1. climb—climbing
The monkey is climbing.
2. sleep—sleeping
The baby is sleeping.
3. eat—eating
The girl is eating.

五、1. Is; sleeping; it is
2. it isn't; drinking water; river
3. Are; playing; they are
4. they aren't; They are climbing the tree

六、1. B 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. D

方法点拨：本题用**联系上下文法**解答。做情景交际的题目要结合上下文来选，填容易确定的答案。1 小题之后的答语表明 1 小题选一般疑问句，A 和 B 都有可能；2 小题之后的句子说明了狗是格林太太的，那么 2 小题应当选 E，询问狗是谁的。结合 2 小题答案可确定 1 小题选 B；3 小题之后的答语表明 3 小题选一般疑问句，那么就是 A 选项——根据上下文可——确定答案。

七、1. A 2. C 3. B
4. C 5. B

八、**范文**：
Today is Sunday. Amy and I go to a zoo by bus. We see lots of animals there. Look! The lion is sleeping. The bird is flying. The rabbit is eating a carrot. What is the bear doing? It's playing with a ball.

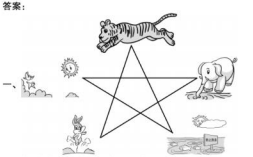
Unit 6 Work quietly!

Part A

课时 1

一、**听力材料**：
Welcome to the zoo. Look! The birds are flying. They are happy. The elephant is near the river. It is drinking water. The rabbit is jumping. The tiger is running. What are the fish doing? They're swimming.

答案：

一、

二、1. C 2. F 3. D 4. A 5. B

三、1. B **点拨**：look at … 表示“看一……”。当 look 后面跟具体有的事物或人时，必须加介词 at。 2. C
3. B **点拨**：通常情况下，some 用在肯定、表示委婉语气的疑问句或者希望对方给出肯定回答的疑问句中；any 用于疑问句或否定句中。
4. B **点拨**：it's 是 it is 的缩写形式，表示“它是……”；its 是物主代词，表示“它的”。

四、1. B 2. F 3. D 4. C 5. A

五、1. We are having an English class.
2. She is cleaning the room.
3. He is reading (a book/books).
方法点拨：本题考查现在进行时中主语与系动词的搭配，以及现在进行时态的陈述句。用**规律记忆法**解答。规律 1：be 动词中，I 和 am 搭配；is 和 he，she，it 搭配；are 和 they，we，you 搭配使用。规律 2：现在进行时陈述句的结构是“主语 + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式（+其他）。”。

课时 2

一、1. E 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D

二、1. A
2. C **点拨**：people 表示复数的概念，故选 C。
3. B **点拨**：同句中主语 the students 是复数形式，故答语中代词用 they。 4. A

三、1. It's 10；00 a. m. They are having an English class.
2. It's 3；00 p. m. She/The girl is reading a book.
3. It's 8；00 a. m. They are doing morning exercises.

四、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A
点拨：此题用**问答配对法**解答。做情景交际的题目首先要读题空前后的句子，找出题空的问句或答语，然后再根据问句或答语找到题空处所填的句子。本题中 1，2 小题是根据题空后的答语确定题空处所填的问句；3，4 小题是根据题空前的问句，选出题空处所填的答语。

课时 3

一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

二、1. what 2. when 3. where 4. whose 5. who

三、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A

四、1. When 2. What 3. Which 4. Why 5. Whose

五、Mike—B Amy—B Zhang Peng—A
Sarah—D John—C

周末加油站（十一）

听力材料：

一、1. having an art class
2. reading a storybook
3. eating dinner
4. listening to music
5. doing morning exercises

二、1. Do you see any pandas?
2. What are the students doing?
3. What is the cat doing?
4. What are you doing?
5. Where is Lucy?

三、Today is Sunday. Chen Jie and her friends are at the zoo. Chen Jie likes pandas. They are so cute and they are eating bamboo. Wu Yifan likes monkeys. He is looking at the monkeys. They are climbing. Where is Amy? Oh, she is looking at the elephant. The mother elephant is drinking water. The baby elephant is playing.

答案：

一、4 1 5 3 2

二、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A

三、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

四、1. —What is he doing?
—He is eating lunch.
2. —What is Lily doing?
—She is reading a book.
3. —What are you doing?
—We are doing morning exercises.
4. —What are the students doing?
—They are reading books.

五、1. B 2. A
3. B **点拨**：一般疑问句中表示“一些”用 any。
4. B 5. A

六、1. She is listening to music.
2. They are doing morning exercises.
3. Yes, they are.
4. No, he isn't.

七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A

Part B&C

课时 4

听力材料：

一、**Lily**: Excuse me! Can I use your crayon?
Tim: Yes, keep your desk clean.
Lily: OK, I will. Thanks. Wow, what a beautiful picture!
Tim: Talk quietly, please.
Lily: Oh, I'm sorry. Anything else?
Tim: Yes, work quietly.
Lily: OK.

答案：

一、B D E

二、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B

三、1. show 2. eating
3. quiet **点拨**：keep quiet 保持安静，是固定用法。
4. keep **点拨**：keep … + 形容词表示“保持……某种状态”。

四、1. C 2. B
3. A **点拨**：这是一个祈使句，以动词原形开头。
4. A

五、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B

六、1. My name is Lily. （答案不唯一）
2. Keep your desk clean.
3. Can you show me the English books?

课时 5

一、1. eating 2. quiet 3. to the right
4. turns 5. your desk clean

二、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A
5. B **点拨**：题空后面的动词是 do，排除 C；he 是第三人称单数，助动词用 does，排除 A；can 是情态动词，不因主语变化而不同，故选 B。

三、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. A 5. C

四、1. Keep to the right.
2. Keep your desk clean.
3. Can we use your crayons?
4. He is talking in the library.
5. They are walking on the bridge.

课时 6

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B
方法点拨：此题用**分类记忆法**解答。根据单词的类别和词性来区别单词。例如：1 小题 A 是不定代词，B，C 是动词的-ing 形式；3 小题 A、B 是动词，C 是副词；5 小题 B 是名词，A，C 是形容词。

二、1. B **点拨**：teach 是动词，后面跟人称代词的宾格形式。A 是主格，C 是物主代词。 2. C 3. C
4. A **点拨**：第一个题空表示“在进行么”用 say 的-ing 形式；第二个题空表示讲某种语言，用 speak 的-ing 形式。

三、1. clean 2. cleans 3. cleaning

四、1. does 2. playing 3. cooking
4. drawing a picture
5. I am speaking Chinese.

五、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F

周末加油站（十二）

听力材料：

一、1. reading a book
2. eating lunch
3. talk quietly
4. keep your desk clean
5. keep to the right

二、1. Please take turns.
2. Keep quiet.
3. I can speak English and Chinese.
4. Anything else?

三、1. What are you saying?
2. Are you playing music?
3. What's Chen Jie doing?
4. Keep to the right.

四、1. Talk quietly in the library.
2. The bus is coming. Please take turns.
3. My sister is playing music.
4. Can you draw a picture for me?

答案：

一、2 5 4 3 1

二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A

三、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B

四、1. Talk quietly 2. take turns
3. playing music 4. draw a picture

五、1. Keep to the right. 2. Keep your desk clean.
3. Talk quietly. 4. Take turns.

六、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

七、1. C **点拨**：这是一个祈使句，祈使句的基本结构是“动词原形 + 其他”。其中 please 可放在句首，也可放在句尾。 2. B 3. B 4. A

八、1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. E

九、1. drawing pictures 2. are speaking English
3. Amy; Chen Jie 4. flying kites; Zhang Peng

5. take turns

方法点拨：本题用**抓关键信息法**解答。短文主要描述了孩子们在自然公园的情景，我们在读短文的时候将人物和他们所做的事圈起来，做题的时候根据题干中的人名或动作定位到短文中的相应位置。

十、范文：

Hello! This is my family. Everybody is busy. My mother is cooking supper in the kitchen. My father is writing a letter in the study. He usually writes to my uncle. My brother, Tim is doing his homework in his bedroom. I am cleaning the room. My cat Mimi is eating fish in the living room.

Recycle 2

一、1. When 2. Which 3. Why
4. Whose 5. What

点拨：做此类试题时，先看答语，再根据答语确定问句问的是什么。what 什么；whose 谁的，是询问物品的归属；why 为什么，询问原因；which 哪一个；when 什么时候，何时，询问时间。

二、1. C
2. C **点拨：**who's 和 whose 发音相同，但是用法不同。whose 表示“谁的”，询问物品的归属；who's 表示“谁是……；……是谁”。答语中横线之后没有名词，故横线上填名词性物主代词。
3. A 4. B 5. B

三、1. She is drawing pictures.
2. It's on Oct. 1st.
3. It is autumn.
4. are they doing; doing morning exercises

四、1. UK 2. November
3. does her homework
4. They are shopping.
5. Yes, he is.

期末复习训练

Unit 1 复习训练

一、1. eat breakfast 2. goes for a walk
3. takes a dancing class 4. play sports
5. go shopping

二、1. B **点拨：**Let's 后跟动词原形。
2. C 3. B 4. A
5. C **点拨：**在具体的钟点前用介词 at，泛指上、下午、晚上时用介词 in。

三、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. B 5. C

四、1. He is a doctor.
2. He goes to work at half past six in the evening.
3. He plays sports in the park. /In the park.
4. He gets up at half past two in the afternoon.
5. He usually goes home at 8 a. m.

Unit 2 复习训练

一、1. C 2. A
3. C **点拨：**由横线后的“are”可知横线上填 leaf 的复数形式。leaf 的复数形式是 leaves。
4. B

二、1. go on a picnic
2. Why; summer; go swimming
3. Which season; winter; snow
4. What season; autumn; pick apples

三、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B

四、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F

Unit 3 复习训练

一、1. in 2. on 3. at; in 4. at 5. on

二、1. C **点拨：**will 后跟动词原形。 2. A 3. C
4. A **点拨：**a few “一些”，其后跟可数名词的复数形式。
5. C **点拨：**句意：一年有 12 个月。第六个月是 6 月。第一个空表示数量，填数词；第二个空表示“第……个”用序数词。

三、1. Whose birthday is in April?
2. When is the party?
3. I will play the *pipa* for her.
4. When is China's National Day?

四、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F

Unit 4 复习训练

一、

one	five	eleven	twenty	twenty-five
1st	5th	11th	20th	25th
twelve	nineteen		twenty-two	
twelfth	nineteenth		twenty-second	

二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A

三、1. ten 2. first
3. third **点拨：**句意：我的教室在三楼。表示第几层楼时，用序数词。另外，句中 floor 是可数名词单数，显然不能填基数词 three。
4. nine 5. second

四、1. March 12th 2. December 25th
3. October 2nd 4. April 3rd
5. May 1st 6. second; May

五、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

Unit 5 复习训练

一、1. playing 2. picking 3. reading 4. drinking

二、1. C
2. B **点拨：**the picture of … 表示“……的照片/图片”，是固定用法。 3. A
4. B **点拨：**形容词性物主代词在句子当中作定语，后面要有名词，名词性物主代词相当于名词的作用，可单独使用，后面没有名词。

三、1. They are in the classroom. 2. No, they aren't.
3. They are sleeping. 4. It's his.

四、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C

Unit 6 复习训练

一、1. quietly
2. do morning exercises
3. Take turns
4. keep; clean

二、1. B **点拨：**表示说某种语言用 speak。
2. C 3. A
4. B **点拨：**上句句意：我们正在等公交车。A. 小声讲话；B. 按顺序来；C. 靠右行。
5. C

三、1. C 2. D 3. E 4. A 5. B

四、1. having a class
2. eating lunch
3. listening to music
4. keep to the right

五、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

典点®
活页检测卷
后附全书参考答案及点拨
五年级
英语 下
PEP版

Unit 1 My day

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. eat breakfast 吃早饭
2. have … class 上……课
3. play sports 进行体育运动
4. exercise 活动；运动
5. do morning exercises 做早操
6. eat dinner 吃晚饭

二、我要掌握的句型

—When do you finish class in the morning? 你们上午的课几点结束？

—We finish class at 1 o'clock. 我们一点钟结束上午的课。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Zhang Peng: When do you finish class in the morning?	张鹏：你们上午的课几点结束？
Pedro: We finish class at 1 o'clock. Then we eat lunch at home.	皮卓：我们一点钟结束上午的课。然后我们在家吃午饭。
Zhang Peng: Wow! When do you go back to school after lunch?	张鹏：哇！吃完午饭你们什么时候返回学校？
Pedro: At 2: 30. Classes start at 3 o'clock.	皮卓：在两点半。三点钟开始上课。
Zhang Peng: When do you usually eat dinner in Spain?	张鹏：在西班牙你们通常什么时候吃晚饭？
Pedro: Usually at 9: 30 or 10 o'clock.	皮卓：通常在九点半或十点。
Zhang Peng: Wow! That's too late!	张鹏：哇！那太晚了！

考点突破营

询问他人的作息时间安排及回答的句型：

问句句型结构：When do you + 动词（短语）原形 + 其他?

该句为 when 引导的特殊疑问句，其中疑问词 when 表示“什么时候；何时”，是对某一动作发

生的时间进行提问。

答语句型结构：I /We（+频度副词）+动词（短语）原形+at+具体时间. 在口语中也可以直接用“At+具体的时间.”来回答。

例句：—When do you go to bed? 你什么时候上床睡觉？

—I go to bed at 9: 00. 我9点睡觉。

易错点提示　在具体的时刻前通常用介词at。

幽默小故事

原 文	译 文
Lady First	女士优先
A teacher asked her class: “Is the sentence ‘The ox and the cow are in the fields.’ correct?”	一位老师问她的学生：“‘公牛和母牛在田里。’这个句子对吗?”
Most of the children said, “Yes, it is right!”	大多数学生说：“对，它是对的!”
And only one little boy said, “No, it is not correct. The lady must be mentioned first.”	只有一个小男孩说：“不，它不对，应该先说女士。”

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. clean my room 打扫我的房间
2. go for a walk 散步
3. go shopping 去买东西；购物
4. take 学习；上（课）
5. dancing 跳舞；舞蹈
6. take a dancing class 上舞蹈课

二、我要掌握的句型

—What do you do on the weekend? 你周末做什么？

—I often watch TV and play ping-pong with my father.

我经常看电视，也常和我爸爸一起打乒乓球。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Shopkeeper: Why are you shopping today?	店主：为什么今天是你在购物？
Sarah: My mum worked last night. So I'm shopping today.	萨拉：我妈妈昨晚工作了。所以今天我来购物。
Shopkeeper: Good girl! So what do you do on the weekend?	店主：好姑娘！那你周末做什么？
Sarah: I often watch TV and play ping-pong with my father.	萨拉：我经常看电视，也常和我爸爸一起打乒乓球。
Shopkeeper: That sounds like a lot of fun.	店主：那听起来好像很有趣。
Sarah: Yes, but I'm also hard-working. I usually wash my clothes. Sometimes I cook dinner.	萨拉：是的，但我也很勤劳。我通常洗我的衣服。有时候我做晚饭。
Shopkeeper: You're so busy! You need a robot to help you!	店主：你很忙啊！你需要一个机器人来帮你！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin's play	罗宾的戏剧
Robin is in a play. He is Robinson Crusoe. Here is a letter from him.	罗宾在演戏。他扮演鲁滨逊·克鲁索。这是一封来自他的信。
My name is Robinson. I live on an island. I always get up early every day. I wash my face, and then I eat breakfast. Sometimes I clean my cave, too.	我的名字叫鲁滨逊。我住在一个岛上。我每天总是很早起床。我洗脸，然后我吃早饭。有时我也打扫我的山洞。
I often go swimming in the water. In the afternoon, I play sports with my friend. His name is Friday.	我经常去水里游泳。下午，我和我的朋友进行体育运动。他的名字叫星期五。
Friday is good at sports. He often wins.	星期五擅长运动。他经常获胜。

考点突破营

1. 询问别人周末活动安排的句型：

问句句型结构：What do you（+频度副词）do on the weekend?

该句是what引导的特殊疑问句。

答语句型结构：I/We（+频度副词）+动词（短语）原形+其他.

例句：—What do you do on the weekend? 你周末做什么？

—I usually read books. 我通常看书。

2. usually表示“通常地；惯常地”，是一个频度副词，表示做事的频率，类似的频度副词还有：always总是，一直，often经常，sometimes有时。

例句：We usually get up at 7 o'clock.　我们通常7点起床。

图示记忆法：

辨析often，always，usually，sometimes的频率（阴影的大小表示频率高低）

always 

usually 

often 

sometimes 

我是小作家

如何写你的日常活动

一、思维步骤：

1. 立意，列大纲。一般情况按时间顺序来写。
2. 确定时态。此类作文为经常性的动作，一般情况要用一般现在时来写。

二、词汇储备：

get up 起床　do morning exercises 做早操　eat breakfast 吃早饭　have... class 上……课
eat lunch 吃午饭　watch TV 看电视　go home 回家　go swimming 去游泳
do homework 做家庭作业　go to bed 上床睡觉

三、经典范文：

My day

Hello, my name is Amy. I get up at 6: 30. I often eat breakfast at 7: 00. I go to school at 7: 15.

In the morning, I have 3 classes. At 11: 00, I eat lunch at home. I have 3 classes in the afternoon. At 4: 30, I play sports with my friends. I go home at 5: 00. I watch TV with my family at 7: 00. Then I do my homework. I often go to bed at 9: 00. This is my day.

Unit 2 My favourite season

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. spring 春天
2. summer 夏天
3. autumn 秋天
4. winter 冬天
5. season 季节

二、我要掌握的句型

—Which season do you like best, Mike?

迈克，你最喜欢哪个季节？

—Winter. I like snow.

冬天。我喜欢雪。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mr Jones: Do you like the music, children?	琼斯老师：你们喜欢这个音乐吗，孩子们？
Mike: Yes. It's very beautiful. What is it?	迈克：喜欢。它很美妙。它是什么？
Mr Jones: *The Four Seasons*. Today we'll draw the seasons. Which season do you like best, Mike?	琼斯老师：《四季》。今天我们将画四季。迈克，你最喜欢哪个季节？
Mike: Winter. I like snow.	迈克：冬天。我喜欢雪。
Mr Jones: I like snow, too. Which season do you like best, Wu Yifan?	琼斯老师：我也喜欢雪。你最喜欢哪个季节，吴一凡？
Wu Yifan: Spring. It's pretty.	吴一凡：春天。它很美丽。
Mr Jones: Yes, it is.	琼斯老师：是的，它很美丽。

考点突破营

1. which 是一个特殊疑问词，意思是“哪一个”。

例句：Which book is yours? 哪一本书是你的？

2. Which season do you like best, Mike? 迈克，你最喜欢哪个季节？

这是一个询问别人最喜欢哪个季节的句型，问句的同义句是：What's your favourite season?

答语可以是 I like + 季节 + best. 或直接说季节名称。

例句：—Which season do you like best? 你最喜欢哪个季节？

—I like spring best. 我最喜欢春天。

英美文化角

西方人的一日三餐

早餐一般有面包，如软面包、丹麦面包或牛角面包（croissant）和硬的咸面包，如法国面包（French bread）、烤面包片（toast）。一般饮用牛奶或咖啡，有时也会吃一些蛋类食物，如水煮蛋（boiled egg）。煮蛋又分熟透的和半熟的两种。而煎蛋则分全熟、半熟和太阳蛋。西方人午餐一般有汤（soup）、沙拉（salads）、主菜（main dishes）及餐后甜食（dessert）。西方人的晚餐与午餐大致相同，只是没有甜点，而代之以饮料，如可乐（Coke）、果汁等。

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. picnic 野餐
2. go on a picnic 去野餐
3. pick 摘；采集
4. pick apples 摘苹果
5. snowman 雪人
6. make a snowman 堆雪人
7. go swimming 去游泳

加法记忆法：

英语中有的单词是由两个单词合成得来的合成词。如：

snow（雪）+ man（男人，人）= snowman（雪人）

house（房子）+ work（工作）= housework（家务活）

basket（篮子）+ ball（球）= basketball（篮球）

play（玩）+ ground（地面）= playground（操场）

二、我要掌握的句型

—Why? 为什么？

—Because I like summer vacation! 因为我喜欢暑假！

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Amy: Hello, Miss White. Look at my picture.	埃米: 你好，怀特老师。看我的图片。
Miss White: Good job! I like the trees. The colours are very pretty!	怀特老师: 做得好！我喜欢这些树。颜色很漂亮！
Amy: Yes. I like autumn best. The weather is good and the colours are beautiful! Which season do you like best, Miss White?	埃米: 是的。我最喜欢秋天。天气很好，颜色很漂亮！你最喜欢哪个季节，怀特老师？
Miss White: Summer.	怀特老师: 夏天。
Amy: Why?	埃米: 为什么？
Miss White: Because I like summer vacation!	怀特老师: 因为我喜欢暑假！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin likes them all!	罗宾喜欢它们全部！
Look at the green trees and pink flowers.	看绿色的树和粉色的花。
I like spring because there are beautiful flowers everywhere.	我喜欢春天，因为到处都有美丽的花。
The weather is hot, hot, hot!	天气炎热、炎热、炎热！
I like summer, but I can't swim.	我喜欢夏天，但是我不会游泳。
What lovely colours! The leaves fall and fall and fall. I love fall!	多么美丽的颜色啊！叶子落下、落下、落下。我爱秋天！
Wow! I want to paint a picture, too!	哇！我还想要画一幅画！
There is lots of snow. It is white everywhere.	有很多雪。到处都是白色的。
I like winter because I can play in the snow.	我喜欢冬天，因为我能在雪里玩。

考点突破营

询问别人喜欢某个季节的原因及回答的句型：

问句句型结构：Why do you like + 季节名称?

回答：Because… 因为……

在这组句型中，有时直接用“Why?”这个简略的问句来询问原因。通常要用“because”引导的句子进行回答，用来陈述原因，有时也会省略掉 because。

例句：1. —Why do you like spring? 你为什么喜欢春天？

—Because I can fly kites. 因为我能放风筝。

2. —I like winter. 我喜欢冬天。

—Why? 为什么？

—Because I can make snowmen. 因为我可以堆雪人。

文化链接

澳大利亚的季节和我国的季节

我们国家是炎热的夏天时，澳大利亚却是寒冷的冬天。你知道这是为什么吗？因为我国位于北半球，而澳大利亚位于南半球，南北半球的季节恰好相反。因此我们要避暑的话，除了去我国的一些避暑山庄和避暑胜地，还可以出国去澳大利亚，说不定你还可以赶得上堆雪人或打雪仗呢！

我是小作家

如何写自己最喜欢的季节

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定关键词：首先要明确自己最喜欢哪一个季节。
2. 确定内容：在写作内容上，可以写季节气候特征，自然景色，在这个季节可以从事的有趣活动以及自己的感受等。

二、词句储备：

1. fly kites 放风筝　　go swimming 去游泳
   pick apples 摘苹果　　make a snowman 堆雪人
2. 句型：There be 句型　　I like… best.

三、经典范文：

My favourite season

There are four seasons in a year. They are spring, summer, autumn and winter. I like summer best. In summer, it's always sunny and hot. There are beautiful flowers everywhere. I can eat ice cream. I can go swimming with my family, too. I like summer very much. How about you?

Unit 3 My school calendar

Part A

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. January 一月　2. February 二月　3. March 三月
4. April 四月　5. May 五月　6. June 六月

易错点提示 1. 表示月份的单词首字母要大写。

2. 表示月份单词的缩写是单词的前几个字母 + “.”，May 没有缩写形式。

二、我要掌握的句型

—When is the party? 聚会什么时候举行？

—It's in April. 在四月。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mike: We have a few fun things in spring. After the sports meet, we have an English party.	迈克：在春天我们有一些有趣的事情。运动会之后，我们有一个英语聚会。
Zhang Peng: When is the party?	张鹏：聚会什么时候举行？
Mike: It's in April. We have a school trip, too.	迈克：在四月。我们还有一次学校旅行。
Zhang Peng: When is that?	张鹏：那是什么时候？
Mike: It's in May.	迈克：在五月。
Zhang Peng: Cool!	张鹏：酷！

考点突破营

1. 介词 in，on，at 的用法：

（1）in + 上午/下午/晚上/月份/季节/年份。

例如：in the morning, in April, in winter, in 2015

（2）on + 具体的某一天/某一天的上午、下午、晚上。

例如：on Monday, on April 3rd, on Friday morning

（3）at + 具体的时间点或与其他词构成固定搭配。

例如：at six o'clock, at 12：30, at noon

2. 询问并回答某个活动或节日在几月份的句型：

问句句型结构：When is + 活动或节日名称?

答语句型结构：It's in + 月份.

例句：—When is the maths test?

数学测试在什么时候?

—It's in May.

在五月。

易错点提示　月份单词前用介词 in。

英美文化角

母亲节（Mother's Day）

母亲节（Mother's Day）是一个感谢母亲的节日。这个节日最早出现在古希腊；而现代的母亲节起源于美国，是每年 5 月的第二个星期日。母亲在这一天通常会收到礼物，康乃馨被视为献给母亲的花，而中国的母亲花是萱草花，又叫忘忧草。

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. July 七月　　2. August 八月　　3. September 九月
4. October 十月　　5. November 十一月　　6. December 十二月

易错点提示：1. 表示月份的单词首字母要大写。

2. 表示月份单词的缩写是单词的前几个字母 + “.”。

二、我要掌握的句型

—When is the trip this year?

今年的旅行在什么时候?

—It's in October. We'll go to the Great Wall.

在十月。我们将去长城。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Oliver: I like autumn.	**奥利弗**：我喜欢秋天。
I really like the colours.	我真的喜欢这些颜色。
Chen Jie: I like autumn, too. We usually have a school trip in autumn.	**陈洁**：我也喜欢秋天。我们通常在秋天举行一次学校旅行。
Oliver: Great! When is the trip this year?	**奥利弗**：太棒了！今年的旅行在什么时候？
Chen Jie: It's in October. We'll go to the Great Wall.	**陈洁**：在十月。我们将去长城。
Oliver: Cool! I love the Great Wall!	**奥利弗**：酷！我爱长城！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
English Party	**英语聚会**
WHEN: April 12th, 7 p. m.	什么时候：4 月 12 日，下午 7 点
WHERE: Gym	哪里：体育馆
WHAT: You will play games. You will read riddles. You will act out stories. You will meet Robin the Robot. He is a great English teacher!	什么：你们将玩许多游戏。你们将猜谜语。你们将表演故事。你们将遇到机器人罗宾。他是一位很棒的英语老师！
RSVP: Will you come to the party? Please send an email by March 23rd.	请赐复：你将会参加聚会吗？请在 3 月 23 日之前（给我）发一封电子邮件。

考点突破营

1. 询问今年的……是什么时候的句型：

问句句型结构：When is... this year?

答语：It's in + 月份.

有些节日、活动每年在不同的月份，比如中秋节、学校的一些活动、比赛等，我们在问的

时候可以在句尾加上 this year。

例句：—When is Mid-Autumn Festival this year? 今年的中秋节在什么时候？

—It's in September. 在九月。

易错点提示　月份单词和节日单词/短语的首字母要大写。

2. 表达“我们将要做……”的句型：

句型结构：We'll + 动词原形 + 其他. 其中 We'll 是 We will 的缩写形式。

这是一个一般将来时的句型，表示将来某一时刻的动作或状态，或将来某一段时间内经常的动作或状态。

例句：We'll have a school trip this month. 这个月我们将有一次学校旅行。

英美文化角

圣诞节（Christmas）

圣诞节（Christmas）是西方的传统节日，在每年的 12 月 25 日。圣诞节的前一晚叫“平安夜”。吃苹果、戴圣诞帽、寄送圣诞节贺卡、参加圣诞派对、圣诞购物等都是圣诞节的庆祝习俗。

我是小作家

如何介绍月份及节日

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定文章的结构，可以采用“总——分”的结构。先总体介绍一年有 12 个月份，以及自己最喜欢的月份和节日，再重点介绍自己喜欢的月份及节日，并说明理由。
2. 确定时态：可能用到的时态有以下两个：
   （1）一般现在时：主要介绍一年有 12 个月、节日的日期和通常的活动等。
   （2）一般将来时：主要介绍今年某个节日的活动计划。

二、词句储备：

1. 月份单词：May 五月　June 六月……
2. 节日名称：Mother's Day 母亲节　Father's Day 父亲节　Children's Day 儿童节……
3. 句型：节日 + is in + 月份. I'll...

三、经典范文：

There are twelve months in a year. I like May. Because Mother's Day is in May. I often cook meals for my mum. And my birthday is in May, too. I will have a birthday party this year. I'll get many gifts. I also like June. Because I like Children's Day. My parents often take me to the park. We have a good time.

Unit 4 When is the art show?

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. first (1st) 第一（的）
2. second (2nd) 第二（的）
3. third (3rd) 第三（的）
4. fourth (4th) 第四（的）
5. fifth (5th) 第五（的）

易错点提示 一二三的序数词要单独记，它们的缩写形式是：数字 + 英文单词的最后两个字母。

二、我要掌握的句型

—When is the art show? 艺术展览是哪天？

—It's on May 1st. 它在 5 月 1 日。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mr Jones: There are some other special days in May.	琼斯老师：在五月有一些其它特别的日子。
Zhang Peng : What are they?	张鹏：它们是什么？
Mr Jones: The school art show and the reading festival.	琼斯老师：学校艺术展览和阅读节。
Zhang Peng : When is the art show?	张鹏：艺术展览是哪天？
Mr Jones: It's on May 1st.	琼斯老师：它在 5 月 1 日。
Zhang Peng : It's May Day. When is the reading festival?	张鹏：它是五一劳动节。那阅读节呢？
Mr Jones: It's on May 5th.	琼斯老师：它在 5 月 5 日。
Zhang Peng : Wow! May is fun!	张鹏：哇！五月很有趣！

考点突破营

1. 用序数词表示具体的日期：

   在英语中，“几月几日”先说“月”，再说“日”，其中“日”要用序数词，书写时序数词前可以有“the”，也可以没有。但读日期时，the必须读出来。

   例如：March 3rd（3月3日）读法是：March the third

   June 1st（6月1日）读法是：June the first

2. 询问节日/活动在什么时候的句型及回答：

   问句句型结构：When is + 节日/活动?

   答语句型结构：It's on + 月份 + 序数词. 其中It在这里指代问句中提到的节日/活动。

   例句：—When is Children's Day? 儿童节是哪天？

   —It's on June 1st. 它在6月1日。

易错点提示 1. 表示在具体某一天时，前面用介词on。

2. 节日名称的首字母要大写。

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. twelfth (12th) 第十二（的）
2. twentieth (20th) 第二十（的）
3. twenty-first (21st) 第二十一（的）
4. twenty-third (23rd) 第二十三（的）
5. thirtieth (30th) 第三十（的）

二、我要掌握的句型

—When is your birthday?

你的生日是哪天？

—My birthday is on April 4th.

我的生日是4月4日。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
April 4th	4月4日
Mike's birthday	迈克的生日
Chen Jie: When is your birthday?	**陈洁**：你的生日是哪天？
Mike: My birthday is on April 4th.	**迈克**：我的生日是4月4日。
Chen Jie: That's my mother's birthday, too!	**陈洁**：那也是我妈妈的生日！
Mike: Cool! What will you do for your mum?	**迈克**：酷极了！你将为你妈妈做什么？
Chen Jie: I'll cook noodles for her.	**陈洁**：我将为她做面条。
Mike: Chinese noodles are delicious!	**迈克**：中国面条很美味可口！
Chen Jie: Please come then. We can have a birthday party for both of you!	**陈洁**：那么请过来。我们可以为你们两个举办一个生日聚会！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Two new kittens	两只新生小猫
Sarah's cat has two kittens. Read Sarah's diary.	萨拉的猫生了两只小猫。读一读萨拉的日记。
April 15th	4月15日
My cat has two new kittens. They are pink because they are very young. They still can't see.	我的猫新生了两只小猫。它们是粉红色的，因为它们很幼小。它们还看不见。
April 21st	4月21日
The kittens are six days old. They make noises when they are hungry. They have white fur now. They are cute.	小猫六天大了。当它们饿的时候就会发出声音。现在它们有白色的毛。它们很可爱。
April 26th	4月26日
Their eyes are open! They are blue.	它们的眼睛睁开了！它们是蓝色的。
May 3rd	5月3日
The kittens can walk now. They can play with Robin!	现在小猫能走路了。它们能和罗宾玩耍！

考点突破营

询问某人生日在什么时候的句型及回答：

问句句型结构： When is + 某人的 + birthday? 句型中“某人的”可以用名词所有格，也可以用形容词性物主代词。

答语： It's on + 具体的日期.

答语句型也可以是：名词所有格或形容词性物主代词 + birthday is on + 日期.

例句：—When is Miss White's birthday? 怀特小姐的生日是哪天？

—It's on July 1st. / Her birthday is on July 1st.（她的生日）在7月1日。

魔法记忆法：

基数词变序数词的口诀记忆

基变序有规律，结尾加上-th；

一二三特殊记，结尾各是 st, nd, rd；

八去 t，九去 e，五和十二中 ve 变 f，词尾再加-th；

整十基变序，y 改为 ie，结尾仍有 th；

若是遇到几十几，只变个位就可以。

我是小作家

如何介绍日期

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定写作的内容：先整体介绍，明确介绍的是哪方面的内容；再分别介绍每个节日/活动/生日的日期，最后描述自己的情感。
2. 确定写作时态：因为节日/活动/生日日期是经常性的状态，故主要时态为一般现在时。

二、词句储备：

1. 月份单词：January 一月　February 二月　March 三月……
2. 序数词：first (1st)　second (2nd)　third (3rd) ……
3. 句型：某人的（名词所有格/形容词性物主代词） + birthday is on + 日期.

三、经典范文：

My family

I have a happy family. There are four people in my family. They are my father, my mother, my brother and me. There are two birthdays in March. My father's birthday is on March 15th. And my brother's birthday is on March 12th. My brother's birthday is on September 10th. My birthday is on November 20th. I love my family. And they love me, too.

Unit 5 Whose dog is it?

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. mine 我的
2. yours 你（们）的
3. his 他的
4. hers 她的
5. theirs 他们的；她们的；它们的
6. ours 我们的

规律记忆法：

1. yours, hers, theirs, ours 都是在形容词性物主代词的后面加-s。
2. his 的名词性物主代词不变，还是 his。

二、我要掌握的句型

1. The yellow picture is mine. 那幅黄颜色的画是我的。
2. Are these all ours? 这些都是我们的画吗？
3. —Whose is it? 它是谁的？—It's Zhang Peng's. 是张鹏的。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Chen Jie: The yellow picture is mine. Are these all ours?	陈洁：那幅黄颜色的画是我的。这些都是我们的画吗？
Mike: Yes, they are.	迈克：是的，它们是。
Chen Jie: Wow! That picture of Beijing is beautiful. Whose is it?	陈洁：哇！那幅北京的画很漂亮。它是谁的？
Mike: It's Zhang Peng's.	迈克：是张鹏的。
Chen Jie: Look! There is a picture of Shanghai, too.	陈洁：看！还有一幅上海的画。
Mike: It's Yifan's.	迈克：它是一凡的。
Chen Jie: Oh, yes! It's his.	陈洁：哦，对！这是他的。

考点突破营

1. The yellow picture is mine. 那幅黄颜色的画是我的。

这是描述物品归属的句型。句中的 mine 是名词性物主代词，它在句中起名词的作用，相当于 my picture。

描述物品归属的句型结构是：物品名称 + be 动词 + 名词性物主代词/名词所有格. 其中，be 动词是用 is 还是 are 由主语的单复数形式决定。

例句：The blue ruler is hers. 这把蓝色的尺子是她的。

This storybook is Lily's. 这本故事书是莉莉的。

2. Are these all ours? 这些都是我们的画吗？这是确认物品归属的句子。

确认物品归属的句型及答语：

一般疑问句： Be 动词 + 物 + （其他 + ）某人的?

肯定回答： Yes, 主语 + be 动词.

否定回答： No, 主语 + be 动词 + not.

此句型中如果询问单数物品是否归属于某人，be 动词用 is；如果询问复数物品是否归属于某人，be 动词用 are。

例句：—Is that white dog Mike's? 那只白色的狗是迈克的吗？

—No, it isn't. 不，它不是。

—Are those chairs yours? 那些椅子是你们的吗？

—Yes, they are. 是的，它们是。

易错点提示　回答时，表示单数物品不用 this/that 作主语，要用 it；表示复数物品时不用 these/those，要用 they。

3. 询问物品归属的句型及回答：

问句句型结构： Whose + 名词 + be 动词 + 其他?

该句型中 Whose 表示“谁的”，用来引导特殊疑问句，对物品的归属进行提问。

be 动词的形式根据名词的单复数形式确定。

答语句型结构： It's/ They're + 名词所有格/形容词性物主代词 + 名词. 或 It's/ They're + 名词所有格/名词性物主代词.

例句：—Whose bike is this? 这是谁的自行车？

—It's my bike. / It's mine. 它是我的（自行车）。

—Whose pens are these? 这些是谁的钢笔？

—They are Peter's (pens). 它们是彼得的（钢笔）。

易错点提示　（1）whose 和 who's 读音相同，但意思不同，用法也不同。whose 意为“谁的”，who's 是 who is 的缩写，意为“谁是……；……是谁”。

（2）whose 后面名词的位置可以移到句末，例如：

Whose dog is this? 也可以是：Whose is this dog? 这只狗是谁的？

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. climbing (climb 的-ing 形式)（正在）攀登；攀爬
2. eating (eat 的-ing 形式)（正在）吃
3. playing (play 的-ing 形式)（正在）玩耍
4. jumping (jump 的-ing 形式)（正在）跳
5. drinking (drink 的-ing 形式)（正在）喝（水）
6. sleeping (sleep 的-ing 形式)（正在）睡觉

二、我要掌握的句型

—Is he drinking water?

他在喝水吗？

—No, he isn't. He's eating.

不是。他在吃东西。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
(Sam is at Chen Jie's home.)	（萨姆在陈洁家里。）
Sam: Where is Fido now?	**萨姆**：现在费多在哪儿？
Chen Jie: He's in the kitchen.	**陈洁**：他在厨房。
Sam: Is he drinking water?	**萨姆**：他在喝水吗？
Chen Jie: No, he isn't. He's eating.	**陈洁**：不是。他在吃东西。
Sam: Can I play with him now?	**萨姆**：我现在可以和他一起玩吗？
Chen Jie: Yes. Can you take him to the park?	**陈洁**：可以啊，你能带他去公园吗？
Sam: Of course! Fido, come here!	**萨姆**：当然可以！费多，到这儿来！
Fido: Woof, woof!	**费多**：汪汪！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin at the zoo	罗宾在动物园里
Sarah and Robin are at the zoo.	萨拉和罗宾在动物园里。
Robin is excited!	罗宾很兴奋！
Sarah: What are you doing here, Robin?	**萨拉**：罗宾，你在这里干什么？
Robin: I'm looking at a bear.	**罗宾**：我正在看一只熊。
I'm dancing like a bear.	我在像熊一样跳舞。
I'm looking at the rabbits.	我正在看兔子。
I'm eating like a rabbit.	我在像兔子一样吃东西。
I'm looking at a tiger.	我正在看一只老虎。
I'm running like a tiger.	我在像老虎一样奔跑。
I'm looking at an elephant.	我正在看一头大象。
I'm walking like an elephant.	我在像大象一样散步。
I'm looking at a monkey.	我正在看一只猴子。
I'm climbing like him.	我在像猴子一样攀爬。
I'm looking at a bird. I like flying.	我正在看一只鸟。我喜欢飞。
I want to be a bird!	我想成为一只鸟！
Sarah: Robin, do you want to swim like a fish?	**萨拉**：罗宾，你想像鱼一样游泳吗？
Robin: No! No! I don't want to be a fish!	**罗宾**：不！不！我不想成为一条鱼！

考点突破营

1. 现在进行时的一般疑问句及回答：

问句的句型结构：Be 动词 + 主语 + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他？该句型用于确认某人是否正在做某事。

肯定回答：Yes, 主语 + be 动词. **否定回答**：No, 主语 + be 动词 + not.

例句：—Is he listening to music? 他在听音乐吗？

—No, he isn't. 不，他不是。

2. 表示正在做某事的句型：

句型结构：主语 + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他. 其中，be 动词的形式随主语的人称和数的变化而变化。

例句：I am watching TV. 我正在看电视。They are having lunch. 他们正在吃午饭。

易错点提示　现在进行时的构成是“be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式”，两者缺一不可。

Unit 6 Work quietly!

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. doing morning exercises（正在）做早操
2. having ... class（正在）上……课
3. eating lunch（正在）吃午饭
4. reading a book（正在）看书
5. listening to music（正在）听音乐

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What are they doing? 它们在干什么？
   —They're eating lunch! 它们在吃午饭！
2. —What's the little monkey doing? 那只小猴子在干什么？
   —It's playing with its mother! 它在和妈妈玩耍！

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Chen Jie: Look at the pandas.	陈洁：看那些大熊猫。
Mike: What are they doing?	迈克：它们在干什么？
Chen Jie: Haha. They're eating lunch! They're so cute.	陈洁：哈哈。它们在吃午饭！它们真可爱。
Mike: Oh, yes! They like bamboo.	迈克：哦，是的！它们喜欢竹子。
Chen Jie: What's the little monkey doing?	陈洁：那只小猴子在干什么？
Mike: It's playing with its mother!	迈克：它在和妈妈玩耍！
Chen Jie: Do you see any elephants?	陈洁：你看到大象了吗？
Mike: Yes! Look there! The elephant is drinking water.	迈克：是的！看那儿！大象正在喝水。

考点突破营

询问某人/某物正在做什么的句型及回答

1. 当主语是第二人称单数时：

问句是：What are you doing?

答语是：I'm + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他.

例句：—What are you doing? 你在做什么？

—I'm reading a book. 我在看书。

2. 当主语是第三人称单数时：

问句句型结构：What is + 主语（单数） + doing?

答语句型结构：He/ She/ It is + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他.

例句：—What is the rabbit doing? 这只兔子在做什么？

—It is eating carrots. 它正在吃胡萝卜。

—What is Amy doing? 埃米在做什么？

—She is doing her homework. 她正在做家庭作业。

3. 当主语是复数时：

问句句型结构：What + are + 主语（复数） + doing?

答语句型结构：主语（复数） + are + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他.

例句：—What are the students doing? 学生们在做什么？

—They are doing morning exercises. 他们正在做早操。

幽默小故事

Where is the egg? (鸡蛋在哪里?)

原 文	译 文
Teacher: Can you make a sentence with the word "egg"?	老师：你能用"鸡蛋"一词造句吗？
Student: Yes. I ate a piece of cake yesterday.	学生：可以。我昨天吃了一块蛋糕。
Teacher: Then where is the "egg"?	老师：那么"鸡蛋"在哪里？
Student: In the cake, sir.	学生：在蛋糕里，先生。

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. keep 保持某种状态
2. keep to the right 靠右
3. keep your desk clean 保持你的课桌干净
4. talk quietly 小声讲话
5. turn 顺序
6. take turns 按顺序来

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Shh. Talk quietly. 嘘，小声讲话。
2. Keep your desk clean. 保持桌面整洁。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Tom: My name is Tom. What's your name?	**汤姆**: 我的名字叫汤姆。你叫什么名字?
John: Shh. Talk quietly. I'm John. I can show you the English books.	**约翰**: 嘘，小声讲话。我叫约翰。我能带你找到英语书。
Tom: Thanks.	**汤姆**: 谢谢。
John: Here they are.	**约翰**: 它们在这儿。
Tom: OK. Can I read the books here?	**汤姆**: 好的。我能在这儿看书吗?
John: Yes. Of course.	**约翰**: 是的。当然能。
Tom: Anything else?	**汤姆**: 还有其他事情吗?
John: Yes. Keep your desk clean.	**约翰**: 是的。保持桌面整洁。
Tom: OK, I will. Thanks.	**汤姆**: 好，我会的。谢谢。

Read and write

原 文	译 文
The world robot exhibition	世界机器人展览
Robin: Ni hao. Ni zai gan shen me ne?	**罗宾**: 你好。你在干什么呢?
Robot 1: Sorry. What are you saying?	**机器人 1**: 对不起，你在说什么?
Robin: I'm speaking Chinese.	**罗宾**: 我在讲中文。
Robin: Oh, hello. What are you doing?	**罗宾**: 哦，你好。你在干什么?
Robot 1: I'm drawing a picture. Have a look.	**机器人 1**: 我在画画。看一看。
Robin: It's lovely.	**罗宾**: 很美丽。
Robin: Are you cooking?	**罗宾**: 你在做饭吗?
Robot 2: Yes. I'm cooking rice. Asako is making sushi.	**机器人 2**: 是的，我在做米饭。浅子在做寿司。
Sarah & Robin: Can we play music with you?	**萨拉和罗宾**: 我们能和你一起弹奏音乐吗?
Robot 3: Sure. Please take turns.	**机器人 3**: 当然可以，请排队。
Robin: Are you from China?	**罗宾**: 你来自中国吗?
Robot 4: Yes, I am.	**机器人 4**: 是的，我是。
Robin: You're so cool! Can you teach me?	**罗宾**: 你真酷！你能教我吗?
Robot 4: Sure!	**机器人 4**: 当然可以！
Robot 5: Are you doing kung fu?	**机器人 5**: 你在练功夫吗?
Robin: Yes, I am. I'll show you.	**罗宾**: 是的，我是。我将展示给你看。

考点突破营

1. Talk quietly. 小声讲话。这是一个祈使句。

   祈使句的句型结构：动词原形 + 其他. 表示请求、命令或建议等。加上 please 语气更客气。

   例句：Write it on the blackboard. 把它写在黑板上。

   Come in, please. 请进。

2. 表示“保持某物的某种状态”的句型：

   句型结构：Keep + 某物 + 形容词.

   例句：Keep your bedroom clean, Mike. 迈克，保持你的卧室干净。

我是小作家

如何描述一个场景或一幅画

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定时态：因为所描述的场景或画中的动作都是正在发生的，所以主要的时态为现在进行时。
2. 确定写作思路：先整体描述（画中的）场景，然后再详细描述每个人正在进行的活动，最后表达人物的心情。

二、词句储备：

表示动作的单词/短语：

run 跑步　dance 跳舞　draw pictures 画画　fly a kite 放风筝　play games 玩游戏

read books 看书　play chess 下棋

三、经典范文：

A school trip

It is a sunny day. The students are having a school trip. Look at them. Lily is dancing near the lake. Amy and Mike are flying kites. Some boys are playing football on the grass. Chen Jie is drawing a picture. What is Lingling doing? Look! She is reading a book over there. They are very happy.